旅游实务英语辅导用书

English for Tourism Reference Book

主 编 向 晓

编者向晓李畅

企业顾问 陈 娟

对外经济贸易大学出版社 中国•北京

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

旅游实务英语辅导用书 / 向晓主编. —北京: 对外经济贸易大学出版社, 2012

全国高等院校基于工作过程的校企合作系列教材 ISBN 978-7-5663-0537-4

I. ①旅⋯ II. ①向⋯ III. ①旅游 – 英语 – 高等学校- 教学参考资料 IV. ①H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2012) 第 257936 号

© 2012 年 对外经济贸易大学出版社出版发行版权所有 翻印必究

旅游实务英语辅导用书 English for Tourism Reference Book

向 晓 主编 责任编辑:胡小平 红 梅

对外经济贸易大学出版社 北京市朝阳区惠新东街10号 邮政编码: 100029 邮购电话: 010-64492338 发行部电话: 010-64492342 网址: http://www.uibep.com E-mail; uibep@126.com

山东省沂南县汇丰印刷有限公司印装 新华书店北京发行所发行 成品尺寸: 185mm×260mm 13.75 印张 318 千字 2012 年 10 月北京第 1 版 2012 年 10 月第 1 次印刷

ISBN 978-7-5663-0537-4 印数: 0 001 -1 500 册 定价: 29.00 元

出版说明

教育部 [2006] 16 号文中提出: "要积极推行与生产劳动和社会实践相结合的学习模式,把工学结合作为高等职业教育人才培养模式改革的重要切入点,带动专业调整与建设,引导课程设置、教学内容和教学方法改革。"与之相对应的课程开发方式和课程内容的改革模式是"与行业企业共同开发紧密结合生产实际的实训教材,并确保优质教材进课堂"。"全国高等院校基于工作过程的校企合作系列教材"正是对外经济贸易大学出版社在高等职业教育课程建设领域的最新研究成果。

本系列教材适用于全国高职高专院校英语专业的商务/应用/外贸/旅游等英语方向以及 国际贸易、国际商务或财经类专业的学生;同时适用于全国各高等院校应用型本科英语专业的商务英语方向和国际贸易、国际经济、国际商务及国际工商管理等商科专业的学生。

本系列教材主要呈现以下特点:

1. 体现"基于工作过程"

在我国高等职业教育新一轮课程改革中,我们学习、引进并发展了德国职业教育的一种新的课程模式——基于工作过程的课程模式,指"为完成一件工作任务并获得工作成果而进行的一个完整的工作程序"建立起来的课程体系。

2. 突出"校企合作"

课程体系的"校企合作"以教师和企业人员参与为主体,是"校企合作,工学结合"的人才培养模式发展的必然产物,旨在提高学生的综合能力,尤其是实践能力和就业能力,实现学校教学与工作实践的零距离。

"全国高等院校基于工作过程的校企合作系列教材"的课程方案与传统的课程方案相比,它打破了高等职业教育学科系统化的课程体系,在分析典型职业活动工作过程的前提下,按照工作过程中的需要来设计课程,以突出工作过程在课程框架中的主线地位,整合优化了理论知识与实践活动。教材编写过程中,教师结合自身的教学实践、调研论证和外贸专家对工作岗位的实际要求来安排课程结构和内容,形成了具有特色的基于工作过程的校企合作系列教材体系。

本套教材包括《致用商务英语阅读(上册)》、《致用商务英语阅读(下册)》、《外贸函电与单证实训教程》、《商务翻译实务》、《国际市场营销实务》、《商务英语函电》、《国际贸易实务(英)》、《商务谈判实务(英)》、《酒店实务英语》、《旅游实务英语》、《会展实务英语》、《商务英语口译》、《外事接待实务英语》、《商务礼仪实务英语》、《涉外企业管理实务》、《旅游英语口语》、《进出口报关实务》、《外贸跟单实务》、《国际商务单证实务》、《国际货运代理实务》、《报检实务》、《生产物流运作实务》、《实用商务英语口语教



程》、《国际商务英语口语实训》、《中英文导游实训教程》、《中英文酒店服务实训教程》、《集装箱运输实务》、《跨文化交际技巧——如何与西方人交往》和《商务英语听说》等教材。作者都是本专业的"双师型"教师,不仅具有丰富的语言教学经验,而且具备企业第一线的工作经历,主持或参与过多项国家或省市级相关科研项目,这为本套教材的编写质量提供了有力的保证。

值得注意的是,本系列教材不是封闭的,它随着教学模式和课程设置的变化,将不断推出新的内容,以丰富整个体系。

同时,本套教材均配有辅导用书和 PPT 课件等立体化教学资源,供教师教学参考(下载网址: http://www.uibep.com)。

对外经济贸易大学出版社 2012 年 8 月

前 言

《旅游实务英语》是"全国高等院校基于工作过程的校企合作系列教材"之一。本教材彻底解构了学科型知识组织模式,使教材的内容从单一的英语知识传授,改造为融旅游业专业知识、专业技能、语言知识、文化知识、社交礼仪和旅游语境相互融合的工作岗位知识体系,其中语言语料从旅游一线进行收集、精选和加工;结合工作过程对知识的整合从宏观深入到微观,从表面深入到本质。首先,针对导游实际需要对教学内容进行精选,取材主要针对全国各地世界遗产包括文化遗产、自然遗产和自然与文化遗产,也涉及国外风景名胜,此外,导游过程中的各个环节所涉及的知识尽量融入教材,其中社会知识和旅游文化知识以及工作技能也融入教学内容中;参观游览部分为本书重点,强调旅游文化知识导入;其它部分强调社会知识和工作技能的导入。

教材从宏观的角度分成四大模块: 迎客服务→观光服务∪生活服务→送客服务,教材结构就是按照这个过程来组织的,此外,各个部分中的核心内容情景会话和导游词的组织也是结合工作过程、工作任务和旅游环境进行了精选、组织和重构。下面为课时分配计划表:

=	
7	_
~~	

课时分配计划

教材模块	课时分配
迎客服务	4×2=8 课时
观光服务	14×3=42 课时
生活服务	6×2=12 课时
送客服务	2×2=4 课时
总计	66 课时

教材也遵循传统单元学习优势。每个小单元分为六个小部分,小部分与单元主题尽量衔接和对应,包括导入、情景对话、导游词、补充阅读、知识技能的巩固与训练等六个部分。内容如下:

- 1. Introduction: 建议采取课堂问题讨论的形式进入学习主题,在学生质疑过程中,不断扩大讨论范围和渲染课堂气氛。
- 2. Situational Dialogue: 强调学生面对面交流能力的培养,建议对学生进行结伴训练和角色扮演。
- 3. Guide Speech: 按照工作过程程序,针对旅游景点进行陈述并对游客动态趋势进行预测性模拟陈述和回应。

- 4. Supplementary Reading: 内容主要从宏观或微观的角度对单元主题涉及的内容进行补充和扩展。
- 5. Abilities and Quality:强调现场经验、工作方法、操作技能和技巧的介绍; Culture:介绍当地的民俗风情、生活习惯,为现场工作能力的提高积蓄力量,培养潜力;强调职业能力的深层拓展。
- 6. Consolidation: 针对知识要点进行集成化训练,包括质疑解惑、难点突破、重点 巩固、对话创新以及文本表达形式的转化等。

《旅游实务英语》由湖南生物机电职业技术学院教师编写;向晓老师主编教材和统稿,编写了景点导游、生活服务共二十个单元。教材迎客服务、送客服务共六个单元由李畅老师编写。全书由唐年青老师主审。编写前,编者在湖南韶山旅行社和华雅国际大酒店等企业进行了调研,收集了许多宝贵意见。湖南财信环球国际旅行社陈娟女士为本教材企业顾问。

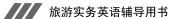
本书在编著过程中会有不当和疏漏之处,欢迎广大同行和使用者批评指正。

编者 2012 年 8 月

Contents

Module One Meeting Service

Unit One	Greeting the Guests····	3
Unit Two	On the Way	11
Unit Three	Hotel Accommodation ····	21
Unit Four	Tour Arrangement ·····	31
	Module Two Sightseeing Service	
Unit One	Palaces ····	41
Unit Two	Altars and Temples ·····	49
Unit Three	Religious Buildings in China	57
Unit Four	Mausoleums ····	63
Unit Five	Military Defenses ·····	69
Unit Six	Classical Gardens ·····	75
Unit Seven	Ancient Cities	83
Unit Eight	Waterscape ·····	91
Unit Nine	Mountain Range ·····	99
Unit Ten	Mountains and Water	105
Unit Eleven	Forest Parks in China	113
Unit Twelve	Special Administrative Region in China	119
Unit Thirteer	n Travel Abroad I ·····	127
Unit Fourtee	n Travel Abroad II ·····	137



Module Three Life Service

Unit One	Dating Affairs ————————————————————————————————————
Unit Two	Handling Emergency 155
Unit Three	Eating Out163
Unit Four	Shopping171
Unit Five	Amusement177
Unit Six	Apologies183
	Module Four Parting Service
Unit One	Checking Out ·····193
Unit Two	
Omt Two	Seeing off the Tourists201
Omt Two	Seeing off the Tourists ———————————————————————————————————

Module One

Meeting Service 模块一 迎客服务

Unit One

Greeting the Guests 第一单元 迎接贵宾

俗语

有缘千里来相会, 无缘对面不相逢。

Introduction

在外国旅游团抵达前,导游熟悉该团行程并落实具体安排,如为客人预定房间,安排接、送的交通工具(飞机、火车、轮船等),了解游客抵达、离开的具体时间及地址(哪个港口、哪个火车站、哪个机场等)。当外宾到达时,导游应至少提前半小时亲自去机场或火车站或码头接他们。游客抵达后,领队应清点人数、帮游客提取行李及带他们过海关。出了海关后,领队应帮助全陪或地陪把行李放上车。外宾通常喜欢立即回宾馆,因此可以直接送他们去宾馆。

Discussion

- 1. What should a tour guide do before the guests arrive?
 - A tour guide should familiarize with the itinerary and implement the detailed arrangements for the guests, such as making room reservations, arranging for the arrival and departure means of transportation, know about scheduled arrival and departure time and place.
- 2. What's the tour leader's task when getting to the destination?
 Upon arrival, the tour leader should check the number of the group members, help the members pick up luggage and pass the Customs. Out of the Customs, he should assist the local guide to hand over luggage and get on the coach.



Part One Situational Dialogues

海关接机

(G=地陪, L=领队, T=游客)

在机场,地陪(Jenny)正在接来自澳大利亚的旅游团。领队(Mr. White)走了过来。

地陪: 请问, 您是来自澳大利亚的怀特先生吗?

领队: 是的。您来自中国国际旅行社是吗?

地陪:没错,我是您们的地陪张琳。很高心见到您。

领队: 我也很高心见到您。谢谢您来接我们。

地陪:别客气。怀特先生,旅途还愉快吗?

领队:还可以。可是您知道,14小时的飞行时间可真够长的。我们只在新加坡停留了一会。

地陪:如此长时间飞行后一定很累,所以我们必须尽快把你们送到宾馆休息。

领队: 非常感谢。

地陪: 怀特先生, 旅游团的成员都到了吗?

领队:都到了,我们总共18人。

地陪: 您们总共多少件行李呢?

领队: 总共18件。

地陪: 我知道了。现在我们去清点行李, 然后让大家上车, 好吗?

领队:行。(对游客们说)现在我来向你们介绍我们的导游。这是来自中国国际旅行社的 张琳小姐。

游客: 张小姐, 您好。

地陪: 嗨,大家好!欢迎你们来中国。我是你们在中国旅游期间的地陪。我随时为你们效劳。

游客:谢谢。

地陪:不用谢。你们现在感觉如何?

游客:有点累。飞行了这么长时间后我们想好好休息一下。

地陪: 我明白。现在请大家去拿推车,把行李放在推车上。我发现有些行李挺重的。

游客:好的。

地陪:(大家都准备好后)那么现在我们将马上送你们去宾馆。希望大家好好休息后都精神焕发充满活力。

游客:谢谢,张小姐。

地陪:大家请注意,现在请跟着我去乘车,车子正在外面等着我们。





≽ 🏳 art Two 🛮 A Guide Speech

欢迎词

女士们、先生们,上午好!欢迎你们来到中国!欢迎你们来到北京!请允许我自我介绍。我是来自中国国际旅行社的张琳,你们的地陪。我很高心大家来到中国。在随后的 15 天里,我一直会陪着大家。现在请允许我介绍我们的司机王师傅,请大家放心他经验非常丰富。我们很高兴为大家服务,并希望大家在一起度过愉快的时光。这些是我们旅行社的徽章,请大家把它别在衣服上以方便识别。

我想,对大多数人而言这是你们的第一次中国之行,但大家可能不会有时差反应。 尽管中国疆土广袤,共跨五个时区,但我们整个国家都使用北京标准时间。我们比澳洲 东部会早两小时,和澳洲西部时间相同。请大家重新设置手表时间,现在是北京时间上 午 10 点。

好啦,现在我花几分钟交代一些重要事情。首先,为了安全起见,由我来保管你们的护照,因此请把护照交给我。第二,如果你们想把美元兑换成人民币,请去银行或货币兑换处兑换。我们入住的宾馆附近就有一家银行,因此不用担心。我不建议大家在宾馆兑换,因为那儿的兑换率会使你们吃亏。有些饭店接受美元,但你们最好换一些人民币并用人民币支付。或者,如果你们愿意的话,就使用信用卡。第三,我希望你们能熟悉当地的交通规则。在中国,车靠右、人靠左,这与澳洲相反。而且酒后驾车是违法的,因此,大家好好玩,但千万别酒后驾车。

在中国期间,我们将尽可能地使你们旅游顺利愉快。如果有问题或要求,请及时告诉我。请大家记住,我的手机号是 13907498585, 我们的车号是 N25678。谢谢!



Part Three Supplementary Reading

Passport and Visa

Exercises: Answer the following questions:

- 1. What is a passport used for?
 - A passport is a document used to certify, for the purpose of international travel, the identity and nationality of its holder.
- 2. What right does a passport give its holder?
 - A passport entitles its holder to return to the country that issued the passport.
- 3. What type of passport should you have if you want to travel abroad? A regular passport.
- 4. Is a visa a separate document to show that the passport is valid?

 No, it's an endorsement that government officials place on a passport to show that the

passport is valid.

5. Can you describe the functions of a visa briefly?

A visa is an endorsement that government officials place on a passport to show that the passport is valid. With it, you can enter the country that grants the visa.

护照与签证

护照

护照是由国家政府签署,为证明该公民国籍和身份的合法证件。可以用来证明护照持有人的身份、国籍以及国际旅游目的。身份证明部分包括姓名、出生日期、性别及出生地。通常国籍和公民身份是一致的。护照本身并没有赋予其持有人进入他国的权利,也无法使持有人在国外期间获得领事保护或任何其他特权。然而正常情况下它赋予持有人回到护照签署国的权利。获得领事保护的权利取决于国际协议,回国的权利取决于护照签署国的法律。

有时在获准进入其他国家之前,护照还必须签证(官方签署的证明)。一般来说,政府签署三种护照:(1)外交护照,签发给出国执行政府公务者;(2)因公护照,签发给其他政府官员;(3)因私护照,签发给私人出国旅行者。

许多国家不要求某些其他国家的公民进入该国时持有护照。例如,美国公民在进入 百慕大、加拿大、墨西哥及大部分西印度群岛时就不需持有护照。

签证

在进入其他国家前,游客通常必须拥有签证。签证是政府官员在护照上签署的证明,以表明该护照有效。旅游者想进入的那个国家的官员为旅行者进行签证,签证证明旅游者的护照已经被检验并得到批准。之后,移民局官员允许持有人进入它们的国家。如官方不许某人进入该国,则可拒绝给此人签证。

全世界有许多不同种类的签证。人们获得的签证种类以其目的地和旅行的目的为依据。人们应提前为旅行做准备,因为旅行要求因国而异。美国主要有两种: 非移民护照和移民护照。非移民护照是为临时来美国旅行的人签发的; 移民护照是签给那些来美国长期定居的人。



lacksquare lacksquare Abilities and Quality

Tourism

Exercises: Answer the following questions

- 1. What were the earliest travel motivation? Food, water, safety or acquisition of resources.
- 2. What has helped individuals' opportunities to travel?

 The improvement in technology increased individuals' opportunities to travel.
- 3. What is the official definition of tourism?



Tourism comprises the activities of persons traveling to and staying in places outside their usual environment for not more than one consecutive year for leisure, business and other purposes.

- 4. How many tourists traveled abroad in 2010? 940 million.
- 5. How much is the annual gaining of tourism now according to the passage? Over \$3 trillion dollars.

旅 游

自人类开始出门远游,食物、水和获取其他资源就成为早期出游的动机。但很快就出现了以快乐或探险为目的的旅行想法。旅游一直依赖科技的发展来提供旅游方式或模式。最早的旅行者靠步行或骑驯化的动物出游。车子和航船的发明为交通提供了新模式。每次科学技术的改进都为人们提供了出游的机会。随着道路交通的改善以及政府的稳定,人们为了教育、观光或宗教信誉而旅行的兴趣不断增加。

旅游由使人们获得旅行经验的活动、服务和行业组成:交通、住宿、餐饮企业、商店、娱乐、活动设施及其他为离开家出游的个体和团体提供接待服务的企业。它涵盖了所有为游客服务的供应商和与游客相关的服务。

世界旅游组织给旅游给出的概念超出了"度假"这固有的形象。被接受的正式定义是:"旅游包括通常为了休闲、商务和其他目的而外出旅游,并在他们的原有环境以外的地方连续住上不超过一年的人所进行的各种活动。原有环境这个词不包括在常住地区进行的旅行,也不包括以日常形象频繁往返于住所和工作地点或社区的出行。旅游已经成为普及全球的休闲活动。2010年,全球出国旅游的人次有9亿4千万,比2009年增长了6.6%。2010年,出国旅游的收入增长到9190亿美元(6930亿欧元),实质增长4.7%。

旅游业对许多国家都很重要,例如法国、埃及、希腊、黎巴嫩、以色列、美国、西班牙、意大利、泰国及许多岛国,例如巴哈马、斐济、马尔代夫、菲律宾和赛瑟尔,因为这些国家很大一部分收入来自与旅游相关的商品、服务以及因为旅游相关的服务行业提供的就业机会。这些服务企业包括交通服务,如航空公司、游轮公司、及出租车业;接待服务,如食宿,包括宾馆、度假胜地;娱乐场所,如游乐园、赌场、购物中心、音乐会场及剧院。世界旅游组织声明旅游业是目前世界上最大的行业,年收入超过了3万亿美元。



lacksquare lacksquare art Five lacksquare Consolidation

I. Oral Exercises

- A: Answer the following questions according to learned guide speech.
- 1. How long will the tour last? Fifteen days.
- 2. What should the tourists wear so as to be recognized easily? Badges.

- 3. Do the tourists from Australia have a lot jet lag? Why or why not?

 No, they don't. Because Beijing time is the same as that of the western part of Australia and only two hours ahead of the eastern part of Australia.
- 4. Where had the tourists better exchange their money into RMB? Banks.
- 5. What should a tourist do if he or she wants to have a walk near the hotel? He or she should have a hotel card with him or her
- B: Ask students to turn the Guide Speech into a dialogue including the related contents.

Greeting Guests at Airport

- (G: Tour Guide; L: Tour Leader)
- G: Excuse me! Are you Mr. Hart from New York?
- L: Yes, I'm James Hart.
- G: Nice to meet you, Mr. Hart. I'm Maggie Zhang, your local guide, from the Kanghui International Travel Service. Just call me Maggie.
- L: Nice to meet you too.
- G: (Maggie Zhang shakes hands with the tour leader.) Welcome to China!
- L: Thank you for coming all the way to meet us at the airport.
- G: With pleasure. Did you have a pleasant trip, Mr. Hart?
- L: Yeah, a good trip, but we feel a little tired after such a long flight.
- G: Well, you all need a good rest first. We must get you to the hotel as soon as possible.
- L: Thank you. I'm sure we will be refreshed and revitalized tomorrow morning.
- G: I hope so. Is everybody in your group here?
- L: Yes, a party of 18. There are ten men and eight ladies.
- G: Ok. Can we go now?
- L: Of course, we can.
- G: Need I help you with your luggage?
- L: No, thank you. I can manage.
- G: Please follow me, ladies and gentlemen. Our coach is just waiting in the parking lot.
- L: That's fine. Hurry up, everybody.
- G: This way, please.

机场接机

(G=导游; L=领队)

导游: 请问, 您是来自纽约的哈特先生吗?

领队: 是的, 我是占姆士•哈特。

导游: 很高兴见到你,哈特先生。我是康辉国际旅行社的玛姬,你们的地陪。就叫我玛姬吧。

领队: 也很高兴见到你, 玛姬。



导游: (玛姬与领队握手。)欢迎你们来到中国。

领队: 谢谢你专门来机场接我们。

导游: 我很乐意。哈特先生, 旅行还顺利吗?

领队: 是的,还不错,但长时间飞行后觉得有点疲倦。

导游: 哦, 你们都需要先好好休息。我们必须先尽快送你们去宾馆。

领队:谢谢。我想明天早上我们就会精神焕发。

导游:希望如此。你们的团员都到齐了吗?

领队: 是的,一共18人,10男8女。

导游:好的。我们可以走了吗?

领队: 当然可以。

导游: 需要我帮你拿行李吗?

领队:不用,谢谢。我能行。

导游: 女士们、先生们,请跟我走。我们的车就停在停车场。

领队:好的。请大家快点。

导游: 这边走,请。

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 我们共飞行了12个小时,只在夏威夷做了短暂降落。 Our flight lasted 12 hours with only a touchdown in Hawaii.

2. 他们在装行李时把你的行李箱给漏掉啦。

They have left out your suitcase while loading the luggage.

3. 为了安全起见,请大家把护照交上来,由我统一保管。 For the sake of safety, please hand in your passports. I will keep them for you.

4. 如果大家有问题或意见的话,请随时打我手机。

Don't hesitate to call me if you have any questions or advice.

5. 如果有人未如实上报(understate)所带物品,该物品就会被没收,并处以罚款。 If a person fails to declare an article or understates its value, the article may be taken away and the individual may be fined.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

- 1. 我们一定尽力使大家在本市游览期间旅行愉快。如果有困难或要求,请尽快告诉我。 我的手机号是 13787363668。今晚我们将入住五星级豪华大酒店 — 华天国际大酒店。 该酒店位于市区,因此去长沙各景区非常便捷。我们将在长沙停留三天。
- 2. 在免税物品中包括一些私人物品。这里的"一些"指的是旅客可于旅行期间用完数量。 至于一些价格便宜的小礼品则可以免税,如美国海关规定单价低于十美元的礼品可以 免税带出。对于水果、蔬菜、肉及肉制品、鲜活动物和易上瘾的烈性药品等,都属于 违禁物品,则禁止携带入境。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide, T=Tourist)

- G: Good afternoon, Madam. Are you Miss White from Canada?
- T: Ah, yes, that's right.
- G: Nice to meet you, Miss White. I'm the tour guide from China Youth Travel Service (中青旅的导游). My name is Huang Li.
- T: Nice to meet you too. I was just looking for you.
- G: <u>I'm always at your service</u>, <u>Madam</u> (随时为你效劳, 女士). By the way, how was your flight?
- T: A peasant flight except for a little tired.
- G: Well, I've already made a reservation for you (为你预定了房间). Shall we go to the hotel right now?
- T: Thank you. I can't wait to take a shower as soon as possible (尽快洗个澡).
- G: So we must go to the hotel as soon as possible. I hope you will be refreshed and revitalized after a good rest.
- T: I think so too.
- G: Come this way, please. (请这边走). The car is waiting outside.



On the Way 第二单元 在旅途中

俗 语 宁停三分, 不抢一秒

Introduction

游客上车后,导游除了致上真挚的欢迎辞之外,还应该给游客大致介绍这个国家或城市的基本情况以给游客留下美好的第一印象。首先,应介绍这个国家或城市的气候、人口、行政区域、社会生活、文化传统、历史及地方特产;然后,应该利用这个机会向游客介绍该国或该城市的经济发展和城市建设以及沿途的街道和重要建筑;最后,如果有一些你认为游客应该了解的习俗或礼仪,此时也是让他们了解的好时候。而且,如果此时能就去哪儿兑换钱币,最好使用何种交通工具,以及如何遵守当地的交通规则提供一些建议,游客们将会非常感激。

记住,讲话时应注视着游客们,这样他们会更认真地倾听。不要问游客的年龄、婚姻状况或其他的隐私。未经游客同意就吸烟是不礼貌的。

Discussion

- 1. 1) Extending a warm welcome to the tourists on behalf of the travel service; 2) Introducing yourself and the driver (and the national guide, if any); 3) Describing briefly the itineraries;
 - 4) Telling the tourists that you will try to make their stay a pleasant one; 5) Telling the tourists briefly about the city, its scenic spots and the hotel the tourists are going to stay in;
 - 6) explaining rules and safety precautions; 7) Wishing them a pleasant and memorable experience.
- 2. It's impolite. Because in western countries, it's customary to make eye contact while talking.



去酒店的路上

(G=导游: T=游客)

导游: 女士们、先生们,下午好!欢迎来到西安。

游客:下午好。

导游: 您请坐好、放松。大家都上车了吗?

领队:都到了。包括司机和你,一共26人。

导游: 哦,谢谢。(面对游客)现在,我们正在前往宾馆,大约需要一个小时。趁此机会,我向大家介绍我们的司机和我。我叫珍妮·张,你们就叫我珍妮吧。这是我们的司机,张龙。他是一位有二十多年驾龄的老司机,因此,大家会非常安全。我们会尽力使你们的旅途舒适、愉快。

游客:谢谢。珍妮,我们今晚住哪儿?

导游: 我们今晚入住一家位于市中心的四星级宾馆,从那儿去商业街很方便。

游客:太好啦。今晚我想去街上逛逛。你能给我们一些建议吗?

导游: 当然可以。如果你想品尝当地的小吃,你应该去回民街,那儿有各种美食和小吃,如烤肉、羊肉泡馍、汤包、炒饭、黄桂柿饼等。

游客:哈,你的介绍让我都要流口水啦。那么明天的行程是如何安排的呢?

导游:明天我们八点准时出发,因此你们七点半吃早餐。我们要参观许多历史名胜。或许这是你们第一次来西安。你们对西安了解多少啊?

游客: 我知道西安与雅典、开罗和罗马齐名,被称为世界四大文明古都之一。你能否介绍得更详细点?

导游: 我很乐意。西安是陕西省的省会,也是古代闻名遐迩的长安。它有 3000 多年历史, 是中国历史上七大古都之一。作为中国黄河流域盆地文明的发源地之一,它曾是 十三个朝代和帝国的首都。

游客: 哇,太了不起啦。那我们在西安旅游期间会参观哪些历史名胜?

导游: 别急,所有重要的历史名胜我们都会参观,如西安古城墙、大明宫遗址公园、西安大清真寺、西安西周 将博物馆以及兵马俑。

游客:太棒啦。那我们会去华清池吗?我听说杨贵妃是中国古代四大美女之一她曾在此 沐浴。

导游:哈,看来你对中国历史了解不少啊。

游客: 我对中国文化很感兴趣, 也看过一些有关中国的历史书。

导游:很好。我们肯定会去华清池,你知道杨贵妃是玄宗皇帝最喜欢的妃子,但最后上 品而死。

游客:太可惜了。那么,西安有什么景点吗?

导游: 在西安附近, 法门寺因拥有佛舍利塔而非常著名, 因为该处安置了释迦牟尼佛指



骨舍利。西安附近的景色也很壮观的。华山是中国著名的五岳之一,以让人惊叹 的峭壁和独特的自然风光而闻名, 但要爬上山顶却不是件容易事。

游客: 真的?我等不及想试试。看!那是什么墙?

导游: 哦,那是著名的古城墙,它共有城门四座。一会儿,我们会从南门进入市区。

游客:珍妮,我们什么时候去参观古城墙?

导游: 明天上午。现在请看前面! 你们看见一座城楼了吗?

游客: 看见了。真雄伟壮观啊! 那就是钟楼吗?

导游: 是的,它是西安的地理中心。它对应的四条大街分别是东大街、西大街、南大街 和北大街,这四条大街都是西安的主要商业街。

游客: 那么,我们已经到了市中心啦?

导游: 是的,我们也马上就到目的地——钟楼酒店啦。好,我们到了。

游客: 哇,这酒店真是金碧辉煌啊!

导游: 我很高兴你们喜欢这家酒店。请大家拿上行李下车。

游客:好的。



🌎 🏳 art Two 🛮 A Guide Speech

中国简介

女士们、先生们,上午好!我代表我们旅行社和同事向你们表示欢迎。现在,我简 单地介绍一下中国。

中华人民共和国是一个拥有悠久历史和远古文明的大国。它位于亚洲东部,太平洋 西岸,面积9.6万平方公里。中国与14个国家相邻,与8个国家临海相连。根据最近的 人口普查,中国的总人口截止2010年底时为13亿。中国的首都是北京,即2008年的第 29 界奥运会的举办地。

中国地大物博,被誉为世界上唯一文明没有中断的古国。它有五千多年的历史,黄 河被认为是整个中华文明的母亲河。另外一条伟大的河流长江也起着重要的作用,在中 国的文明发展中占着重要的位置。

中国是拥有56个民族的多民族国家,包括白族、朝鲜族、傣族、俄罗斯族、高山族、 汉族、满族、蒙古族、苗族、锡伯族、彝族、瑶族、藏族和壮族等。汉族占总人口的92%。 不管所占人口是多是少,所有的人民都享有同等权利。在历史发展的进程中,所有的民 族为自己祖国的繁荣昌盛都做出了贡献。特别是对西方客人而言,所有这些有中国特点 的传统和习俗都是独特、有趣和充满魅力的。在所有的传统佳节中,最受欢迎的是春节、 元宵节、端午节及中秋节。

中国旅游资源丰富,旅游业在中国经济发展中起着重要的作用。我们的政府正努力 开发、利用并保护这些伟大的资源。许多著名的景区已被世界科教文组织列为世界文化 与自然遗产,如四川的九寨沟、桂林的漓江、湖南的张家界、山东的泰山,它们都以自 然美景而闻名:世界伟大的哲学家孔子的故乡—曲阜、北京的紫禁城,它们都是著名的



文化遗址;长城和秦始皇兵马俑也是旅游的绝佳去处,它们被历史学家和建筑家盛誉为世界奇迹。在中国旅游期间,你们还会品尝到各种中国美食和地方特产。我相信你们一定会喜欢的。

随着中国的改革开放,越来越多的中国城市正张开热情的怀抱欢迎大家。因此,你们一定会拥有一个神奇的、新异的、愉快且舒适的旅行。

最后,我衷心地希望大家在中国过的开心,度过一个愉快的中国之旅。



Part Three Supplementary Reading

World Heritages in China

Exercises: Answer the following questions:

- 1. How are world heritage sites selected?
 - According to the UNESCO Convention Concerning the Protection of World Cultural and Natural Heritage, a property is justified as world heritage if it is of outstanding universal value from the point of view of history, art, science, aesthetics, ethnology, anthropology, natural beauty and conservation, etc.
- Whom does a world heritage belong to once it is identified?
 A world heritage belongs to humankind in general rather than merely the local people of the territory.
- 3. What is the definition of a world heritage?
 - A world heritage is a masterpiece of human ancestors or nature itself, which helps deepen our understanding of the world and human as well as the interaction between nature and human.
- 4. What's the duty of the UNESCO in the aspect of world heritage?

 The duty of UNESCO is to encourage the identification, protection and preservation of cultural and natural heritage around the world.
- 5. How many properties in China have been inscribed on the World Cultural Heritage List by June 2011?

Twenty-nine properties.

中国的世界遗产

世界遗址是联合国通过严格的程序认真挑选出来的。根据联合国科教文组织有关保护世界文化及自然遗产协定,一项财产是否为世界遗产要从历史、艺术、科学、美学、人类文化学、古人类学、自然美和保护等方面看是否具有显著的普适价值。换句话说,世界遗址属于整个人类而不是仅仅属于领域范围里的当地人。世界遗址是人类祖先或自然本身的杰作,它有助于加深我们对世界与人类的了解以及人与自然之间的相互作用的了解。



联合国科教文组织致力于在世界范围内对人类具有重要价值的文化及自然遗产的鉴 定、保护和保存。所有被他们确认的建筑和遗址不是壮观的建筑、文化基础设施就是自 然美景,都是具有重大意义的地方。

作为四大文明古国之一,中国是个地大物博、历史悠久的国家。中国许多地点都被 列入中国的联合国科教文组织世界遗址或文化或自然或双重遗产。自中国1985年加入《保 护世界文化与自然遗产公约》的缔约国行列以来,中国不断地申遗,使其产业载入世界 遗产名录。截至2011年6月,经联合国教科文组织审核被批准列入《世界遗产名录》的 中国的世界遗产共有文化遗产 29 项、自然遗产 8 项,文化与自然双重遗产 4 项,在数量 上居世界第三位。此外中国还有53项列入预备名单和30项世界非物质文化遗产。



lue lue art Four lue Abilities and Qualities

How to Be a Good Tour Guide

Exercises: Answer the following questions

- 1. What's the function of tourism in a country's economic construction? It bears on a country's image abroad in terms of its political reputation and of the opportunity of earning foreign exchange for a country's economic development.
- 2. What's a tourist guide's duty?
 - His or her duty is to try his or her utmost to make foreign visitors enjoy their trip in a country and at the same time let them understand the country's history, geography, people's customs and its cultural tradition better through their interpretation and efforts.
- 3. What is the most important if you want to be a good guide? You should have patience and good communication skills
- 4. What should a good guide do if he wants to be confident? Do a brief research about the place you will tour and put together a collection of local attraction brochures and keep them with you.
- 5. How should a good guide act when an unexpected thing happens? Be calm and help settle it.

怎样成为一名优秀的导游

由于旅游是一项综合的经济产业,在国家经济建设和对外关系方面起着非常重要的 作用,因此,旅游业在政治声誉、为国家经济建设创汇等方面承担着国家对外形象的责 任。

如何才能成为一个优秀的导游?首先,我们应了解导游是什么。通常来讲,导游的 工作就是带领游客参观美丽的景色,使他们从文化习俗方面了解所在地。旅途中,他/她 代表着旅行社,并通常可能是游客唯一接触到的当地人。导游的职责就是尽自己最大的 能力使外宾在该国旅游愉快,同时通过自己的讲解和努力使外宾了解该国的历史、地理、



人们的习俗、文化传统。此时,导游应该是山河的灵魂、友谊的使者、祖国文化与文明的传播者和新思想的宣传员。事实上,在旅游过程中,导游就是服务员、宣传员、调查员和保护者。一个优秀的导游常用简单但准确的方式使游客了解相关信息。下面几种方式有助于你成为合格的导游。

如果想成为合格的导游,首先一定要有耐心和较好的沟通能力。你还要适应不同的 工作时间,这对导游来说是尤为重要的。

导游同时应对当地情况非常了解。这包括要参观的地方、要进行的活动、当地博物馆、热点以及餐饮场所。因此,对你们要旅游的地方要做个大致的调查。你工作的公司会给你提供当地的信息,然而,你应该还多了解点。把当地热点宣传册收集起来,随身带着。收集网上的一系列网址也是好办法。如果可能的话,在游客抵达前把这些信息发给游客。这样,你就会越发自信,而所有的人也会因你的广博的知识面而留下好印像。这些会为你赢得免费的广告宣传。

好的导游对他人的需求应该反应敏锐。一个导游要善于与人打交道、有趣、知识渊博如教授,但这些才能不会使你获得丰富的经验,除非有人脚受伤时你足够敏锐地意识到这一点。好的导游总是竭力考虑他所带团队游客地需求,而不仅仅只是了解行程安排。好的导游必须有良好的组织能力。你必须能管理好时间,卓有成效地处理好方方面面。有时,你还需要对住宿、交通、就餐及很多其他的事情负责。

一定要冷静,特别是在出现如突如其来的季风、汽车抛锚、或者如果宾馆客满或委 托人病倒等棘手状况时要保持镇静。

最后,优秀的导游会自得其乐也喜欢与他人打交道。别总一个人独处,要热情,这 样游客们会喜欢你的陪伴。你不一定喜欢所有的人,但你遇到的那些随和善良的人就是 你会记住的人。再则,或许下次你会去他们的故乡,他们也会带你四处游览。



I. Oral Exercises

- A. Answer the following questions according to the guid speech learned
- 1. How many neighboring countries does China have? 14.
- 2. Which river is regarded as the mother river of the whole Chinese nation? The Yellow River.
- 3. What traditional festivals are most popular in China? The Spring Festival, the Lantern Festival, the Dragon Boat Festival and the Mid-autumn Festival.
- 4. Which scenic areas have been highly praised as the world wonder by world-famous historians and architects? The Great wall, and the Terracotta Warriors of Emperor Qinshihuang.
- 5. What can tourists also experience during the trip besides the famous scenic areas? Chinese cuisine and different local specialties.
- B. Ask students to turn the Guide Speech into a dialogue including the related contents.



On the Way to the Hotel

(G= Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

G: Is everybody on the bus?

T: Yes, I think so.

G: Shall we go now?

T: Yes, please.

G: Thank you. Now, we are driving straight to the hotel.

T: Well, how far is it to the hotel?

G: It will take us more than an hour, so please sit back and relax yourselves. Now, let me introduce my team first. That is Mr. Liu, our driver, who has more than ten years of driving under his belt, so you are in very safe hands. I am Zhang Ling, from China International Travel Service. You can just call me Maggie, it's my English name. Now on behalf of our colleagues and myself, I'd like to extend a warm welcome to all of you. Welcome to China, welcome to Beijing.

T: Thank you and your colleagues.

G: It's our pleasure. During your visit here, we will take this coach. Please remember the number of it. It's H21608.

T: Maggie, where are we going to stay this evening?

G: You will stay in Beijing Baochen Hotel, near the famous Wangfujing Mall. It is a 4-star hotel, where there is warm and efficient service with extensive leisure facilities. I hope you enjoy your stay there.

T: That's great.

G: Next, I'd like to introduce something about this city. Beijing is the capital of China, there are many famous spots and historical sites, such as the Great Wall, the Palace Museum, the Summer Palace and so on.

T: We are really longing for a visit.

G: You must be very tired after the long trip. I am afraid you need a good rest first.

T: That's very kind of you.

G: Well, here we are. This is the hotel. Let's get off with our luggage and go to the reception

T: OK.

去酒店的路上

(G=导游; T=游客)

导游:每个人都在车上吗?

游客: 是的。

导游: 我们现在可以出发了吗?

游客: 可以了, 请吧。

导游:谢谢。现在,我们乘车直接前往酒店。

游客: 好, 到酒店有多远?

导游: 有一个多小时的车程, 因此大家可以放松一下。现在, 我首先介绍我的团队。那 是刘先生, 他是个拥有 10 多年安全驾驶经验的司机, 你们尽可放心自己的安全。 我是中国国际旅行社的张玲,你们就叫我的英文名玛姬好啦。我在此代表我的同 事和我自己欢迎大家。欢迎你们来到中国、来到北京。

游客: 谢谢你与你的同事们。

导游: 我们乐意为你们服务。在此旅行期间,我们会乘坐这辆车,因此请记住车牌号, H21608.

游客: 玛姬, 今晚我们住哪儿?

导游: 大约要半个小时。这是本市最好的酒店之一,服务热情高效,拥有众多休闲设施, 今晚我们住在著名的王府井购物中心附近的北京宝辰饭店。这是一家四星级的酒 店,服务热情高效,拥有众多休闲设施,希望你们在那住得愉快。

游客: 太好了。

导游:接下来,我为你们介绍一下这个城市。北京是中国的首都,有很多的景点和历史 遗迹, 比如长城, 故宫博物院、颐和园等等。

游客: 我们真是迫不及待了。

导游: 经过长途旅行, 你们肯定非常累了。我想你们首先需要好好的休息。

游客: 你真是太体贴了。

导游:好,我们到了。这就是酒店。让我们下车,到酒店前台去。

游客:好的。

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 西安与雅典、开罗、罗马齐名,是世界上四大文明古都之一。 Xi'an is one of the world's four major ancient civilization capitals, enjoying equal fame with Athens, Cairo, and Rome.

2. 老刘驾驶经验丰富,大家会非常安全。

Lao Liu is an experienced driver, so you are in very safe hands.

3. 这家宾馆位于市区,去商业街很方便。

The hotel is situated in the city proper, so it's accessible to the commercial streets.

- 4. 中国幅员辽阔,是一个具有5000千年历史,唯一一个文明未中断的文明古国 Endowed with terra firma grandeur, China is reputed as the single oldest uninterrupted civilization with 5 000 years' history in the world.
- 5. 中国许多有名的景区已经被联合国科教文组织列为世界自然与文化遗产。

A large number of scenic sites in China have been listed as World Natural and Cultural Heritage by UNESCO.



III. Translate the following passages into Chinese.

- 1. 中国位于亚洲的东部,太平洋的西岸,陆地面积约 960 万平方公里。中国与 14 个国 家接壤,与8个国家隔海相望。根据最新的人口普查数据,中国总人口到2008年底 已达 13 亿。中国的首都北京是 2008 年第 29 届奥运会的举办城市。
- 2. 带闭时, 有些规则和安全注意事项你可能需要向游客解释。这些内容你最好了然于心, 而不要看着提示卡宣读。讲话时最好看着游客,这样他们会更听得更认真。而且如果 你能就去哪儿换钱、用什么交通工具及遵守交通规则等事情给他们一些有益的建议, 他们会非常感激。最后,如果有游客应该了解的习俗或礼仪,这时也可以告诉他们。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- G: Good morning, everybody. First, I'd like to extend a warm welcome to all of you. (我向大 家表示热烈欢迎)
- T: Thank you.
- G: For your own safety, we ask that you refrain from putting your arms out of the window. (别 把手臂伸到窗外).
- T: OK. I've heard that the natural scenery in Xi'an is attractive.
- G: Yes. Xi'an is famous for its unique scenery of blending mountains, water and islets (以其令 人惊讶的峭壁和独特景色而闻名).
- T: Great. I like climbing mountains, especially high and steep ones.
- G: Then, you can have a try. Now, please look ahead (请朝前看). That's the famous Bell Tower
- T: Ha, it's so crowded here.
- G: Yes, the Bell Tower is situated in the city center. The streets around it are the main commercial ones in Xi'an.
- T: Wonderful. I can't wait to visit them.
- G: Don't worry. Tonight you can go there to taste local gourmet (当地的美食). I bet you'll like them.

Unit Three

Hotel Accommodation 第三单元 旅馆住宿

俗语

名酒所在,必有佳泉。

Introduction

食宿安排是导游服务中不容忽视的一项工作,它直接影响游客的情绪和行程的顺利完成。因此旅游日程已经确定,地接社就应在当地宾馆为游客预定好房间。

宾馆就是提供短期付费住宿的地方。现在,大多数宾馆都配有现代设施,包括浴室、空调。此外宾馆里普通的设施有电话、闹钟、电视机、保险柜、备有食品与饮料的小冰柜以及泡茶、煮咖啡的设备。豪华的设施包括浴衣、拖鞋、枕头菜单(几种药物枕头可供选择)、和按摩浴缸。大型的宾馆还提供其他的设施,如饭店、游泳池、健身中心、商务中心、儿童托管、会议场所及其他社会功能服务。宾馆的房间通常按数字编好,方便客人识别。

许多宾馆还提供餐饮,餐费包含在房费里。在英国,根据法律宾馆在规定的时间里 须给客人提供食物和饮品。在日本,廉价旅馆只提供极其有限的住宿空间,生活设施只 能共用。在中国,大多数宾馆(除廉价的小旅馆外)会提供免费早餐和洗漱用品。

Discussion

- 1. What should a tour guide do when arranging for rooms?

 A tour guide should respect his members and listen to the members' wish.
- 2. What should a tour guide do if a tourist wants to go out alone?
 The four guide should show him around, or tell him to take a hotel card with him and keep your telephone number in mind.



Part One Situational Dialogues

登记入住酒店

(C=前台: G=导游: T=游客: L=领队)

前台: 欢迎光临。需要帮忙吗?

导游: 我是中国国际旅行社的张琳。我想为我们这个旅游团办理入住手续。

前台: 请问, 你们预定房间了吗?

导游: 是的, 我们9月2号与刘经理预定的。

前台:请稍等,张小姐。是的,你们预定了20人所需的房间,入住时间从9月9号到9月11号上午,共两晚,对吗?

导游: 没错。房间在哪一层?

前台: 张小姐,你们有六个标间,三间带双人床的双人间及两个单间。除了两间单间外, 其他的房间都在8楼。两个单间在9楼,朝南。

导游:谢谢。

前台:谢谢。请填写这张表格并在右下角签名

导游:好。(填完)给你。

前台: 还请你出示一下你们的护照好吗?

导游: 行,给。

前台:谢谢,这是你们的房卡和早餐券。你们需要叫早吗?

导游: 当然。请在早上7点叫醒我们,我们必须在7点30分早餐。

前台: 行,我们会按您的要求去做。

导游: 能告诉我餐厅日常服务时间吗?

前台: 当然可以。是从早上7点到晚上12点。

导游: 酒吧和咖啡厅什么时间营业?

前台:从下午3点到午夜。

导游: 酒店还提供其它服务吗?

前台:有的,有美发师,有洗衣店,有商店,还有视频游戏。

导游:太棒了!谢谢你的帮助。酒店有旅游地图吗?

前台: 当然,您可以到大厅的报刊亭去购买。那儿的地图很详细,您可以很容易的弄清周边的道路。

导游:谢谢。

前台:别客气,很高兴为您服务。

导游:(对着游客)请注意!现在按名单安排房间。请过来领取您的房卡。威廉先生和夫人、卡特先生·····你们都拿到房卡了吗?

游客: 是的。

导游: 最房把房卡放包里以免丢失,房卡是您住宿和早餐的凭证,别丢了。



游客: 多谢提醒,我们会随身携带。

导游: 如果晚上要出去,请到前台领取酒店名片以免迷失。还有请明天务必在早上7点 之前起床, 然后到一楼早餐。我们将于8点出发。有问题吗?

游客: 明晚住哪?

导游: 我们在此住宿两晚, 所以明天您只需带上您的贵重物品及护照。

游客:好的。

导游: 现在请去乘坐电梯上楼。

(所有游客都随导旅走向电梯,有的已进入了电梯)

导游: 哎呀, 电梯快满了, 刘先生(领队), 您先上去, 我等一下其它人, 行吗?

领队: 行,别担心。(对游客)如果找不到房间,就把房卡拿给楼层服务员看,她会帮你 们的。

游客:明白。



$\succ \mathbb{P}$ art Two $\:$ A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

酒 店 介 绍

女士们、先生们,今晚我们将入住华雅华天国际酒店。这是超五星级的华天酒店集 团的一家连锁酒店。知道华天酒店集团吗?对了,它是湖南省第一家五星级酒店。华雅 华天国际酒店建于 2006 年。距国际机场大约 20 分钟的车程。距本市景点如湖南省博物 馆、贺龙体育场、烈士公园、岳麓山和湖南大学都不超过二十分钟的车程。酒店靠近商 业区, 去一些大的零售直销店很方便。

该酒店拥有866个各具风格的客房,其超卓和谐的设计和合理的空间安排,会使您 感觉到尊荣。客房包括高级客房、豪华客房、高级套房、豪华套房、商务套房等。所有 房间都提供两瓶免费矿泉水,配备有高速互联网接口、小型冰箱、保险箱等设备。酒店 的 21 个不同的会议大厅,可以容纳客人们举行从 10 人到 1 000 人的各种会议和活动。酒 店的食街,拥有中餐馆、西餐厅以及宴会大厅,为我们提供丰富多彩的国际化饮食,让 我们享受美好的生活。

这里的设施可以满足各种会议的要求。除了会议室、谈判室等多种会议室外,还 拥有面积达 1 700 平方米、可以容纳 800 人, 配备 4+1 翻译系统、移动舞台、先进视 频系统、笔记本电脑等设备的国际多功能会议厅。一流的设备可以为全球的客人提供 最好的服务。

酒店还提供豪华一流的娱乐设施。高尔夫俱乐部、英式酒吧、足浴室、游泳池和其 它休闲设施应有尽有。

酒店到了。请带好您的物品下车,在大堂等候,我去为大家办理入住手续。



■ Part Three Supplementary Reading

The Front Office

Exercises: Answer the following questions

- 1. Who are sometimes only representatives of the hotel with whom guests make contact? The employees of front office.
- 2. What roles does a hotel usually consist of? front desk manager, reservations, reception, porter service and concierge.
- 3. What should the front desk manager do when VIPs stay at the hotel? He should give them his personal attention.
- 4. What's the duty of the concierge of a hotel?

 His duty is to coordinates guests' entertainments, travel and other activities.
- 5. How can employees establish good images of a hotel?

 The staff in the front office must have a neat and smart appearance, good manners, adaptability, a working knowledge of language. Moreover, they should love working with people, and have a warm desire to help them.

前 台

前台或许是酒店最重要的地方。这个部门的员工是最先甚至有时还是唯一代表酒店与顾客接触的人员。尽管大小不同的酒店的前台组织架构也有所不同,但某些特定的岗位是所有酒店都要设立的。

前台经理

前台经理又叫做前台主管,要督管前台所有的工作。作为员工事务经理,他(她)负责安排员工工作日程,确保每个岗位 24 小时有人在岗。他(她)也是酒店管理部门制定的政策规范的执行者。当要客,如名人或高官显要到来时,他(她)常常要亲自关注他们的需求。多数情况下,前台经理还要向酒店总经理报告。

预定

负责前台接待和预定服务的员工与客人接触最多。负责预定的员工与客户通过互联 网和电话联系,安排客人行程,记录客人有可能提出的特殊要求。例如,如果客人要求 入住禁止吸烟的楼层房间,他(她)将作特别标记,这样客人到达时就能安排好适当的 房间。

接待

当客人到来,前台接待负责为他们办理入住手续,登记客人姓名、分派房间、回答客人的问题,并处理客人在入住期间的需求。例如,如果客人反映浴室水龙头漏水,前台接待应当通知维修部门以妥善修复。客人退房离开,前台人员要为他们办理相关手续,并将客人对酒店的意见向管理部门报告。



侍者服务

当客人办好住店手续后,酒店服务员或者侍者要给予迎接,为客人拿行李并向其展 示房间,确认房间里的所有物品摆放规范有序并能正常使用。要检查房间里如灯具、通 风机等设备,并要指导客人操作使用如电视遥控器、电话等酒店系统设施。

礼宾服务员

酒店礼宾服务员是前厅部门负责协调客人的娱乐、旅游等活动的专业人员。无论何 时,如果客人需要帮助,比如本地景点的旅游指导,他(她)都要尽快的加以解决。他 (她)要为客人预订餐饮、预订车辆,甚至是安排个人购物。

前厅工作人员必须彬彬有礼。前厅是最先接触客人,给客人留下最初,往往也是最 持久印象的地方,所以,工作人员在服务中应对客人敏捷谦恭,以展示其优秀的素质。 一个灿烂的笑容,一声愉悦的"下午好",大大有助于建立酒店的良好形象。他们必须性 格开朗,不惧怕与陌生人交谈,他们的语音必须清晰易懂、言语真诚。他们做任何事都 要高效率,仪表美观大方。总之,为了提供高效、专业的服务,前台工作人员必须优雅 整洁, 彬彬有礼, 乐于工作, 热心助人。



hilderpoons hoart Four >>> Abilities and Qualities

The Key to the Success of a Hotel

Exercises: Answer the following questions

- 1. What services have become an integral component of lifestyle to modern tourists? Hotel facilities such as room, restaurant, bar, night club or health club
- 2. What does the word "linchpin" mean in the first strategy? Key
- 3. What strategies are mostly used by hotel managers? Customer service, pricing strategy, product differentiation, economic adaptation and innovation
- 4. Which one is the most important among the strategies used commonly? Customer service and innovation
- 5. How can a hotel organization succeed in the ever-growing competition? High quality service, reasonable price, its own characteristics, rational cost and innovation

酒店成功的关键

酒店业已成为全球性产业,其从业者和顾客遍及全世界。住酒店,享受其餐饮、酒 吧、夜总会和健身俱乐部不久之前还被很多人认为是奢侈,现在被认为是正常生活方式 的一部份。此外,过去的二十年,酒店业的需求与供给超越了酒店专门服务于游客的传 统意义,推动了酒店业的全球化,也导致了激烈的市场竞争。对酒店企业来说,一个最 大的挑战是日益加剧的竞争。取得竞争优势已成为酒店企业至关重要的问题。如何才能 在竞争中生存?有一些策略可广为采用。



1. 顾客服务

顾客服务是酒店业的关键。酒店给客人的印象早在客人带着行李到达酒店大厅之前 就开始形成。比如客人在预订时得到了什么样的服务、酒店网站给客人的大致观感,都 会影响客人对酒店服务的评价。

"酒店管理的原则"一书的作者 Dana Tesone 的说: 顾客服务是由一系列互动和服务 从而形成与顾客的良好的关系而构成。作为良好客服的构成,要随时确保与客人交流的 通畅。有时候,包括采取积极主动的行动以摆脱窘境。例如,如果错误地把客人安排进 了还没有进行清洁的房间, 客服质量服务就意味着应采取补救措施安抚客人。(给她/他换 个房间或安排更好的房间比如套房。)

2. 定价策略

酒店的淡季或旺季取决于气候、节假日等因素。音乐演唱会、运动会等一次性事件 也会使酒店需求暴增。成功管理的关键是确定市场供求高峰,并据此制定价格策略。"定 价策略"的作者 Tim Smith 指出,酒店根据一周及随后的数月的相关数据来统计估算营销 能力。一些酒店使用软件根据酒店销售历史统计数据进行费用预算。酒店也参考竞争者 价格定价, 如相邻酒店已客满的话, 提价是可以预期的。

3. 产品差异性

让客人知道自己酒店的与众不同。个性化菜单、客房装饰、结合本地情况的附带旅 游都是酒店彰显特色之处。产品差异不需要搞得太复杂,小小的特色服务,口口相传, 就能使酒店与众不同, 客源不断增加。

4. 适应经济形势

酒店业对经济的衰退非常敏感。成功的关键是在经济不景气时有效的降低成本,在 经济繁荣时保持理智。有效的成本削减必须知道如何在不给客人带来负面影响的前提下 消除浪费。例如,减少前台工作人员可以减少薪水开支,但会让客人等候的时间更长, 让客人不愉快。目标是既要降低酒店费用,又不能影响顾客。

5. 创新

创新是国家发展的灵魂,创新也是一个酒店走在竞争者前面,不断赢得更大的市场 份额的关键。所以一个成功的酒店企业应当拥有目光超前的团队,必须有创新。没有创 新,人类文明将止步不前。没有创新,企业同样也无法在竞争中长久生存。



lacksquare lacksquare art Five $\,\,$ Consolidation

I. Oral Practice:

A: Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. How long does it take tourists to go to the Hunan Provincial Museum by car from the Huaya **Huatian International Hotel?**
 - Less than twenty minutes.
- 2. How will tourists feel living in the Huaya Huatian International Hotel? They will feel distinguished and valued.



- 3. What are supplied in each room?
 - High speed Internet access and 2 bottles of mineral water for free, small refrigerator and in-room safe, etc.
- 4. Are tourists accessible to western food in the Huaya Huatian International Hotel? Yes. Because there is a western restaurant in it.
- 5. Where should the tourists wait when the guide makes check-in for them? In the lobby.
- B. Ask students to turn the Guide Speech learned into a dialogue including the related contents.

Checking in at a Hotel

(G=guide, C=clerk)

- C: Good morning, sir. Welcome to our hotel. May I help you?
- G: Yes, please. We'd like to check in.
- C: Do you have a reservation?
- G: Yes, we have booked nine rooms.
- C: May I have your full name, please?
- G: Zhang Ling. Z-H-A-N-G L-I-N-G, from China International Travel Service. I made a reservation on August 20th.
- C: Let me check it. (After a while) I am sorry to have kept you waiting, Miss Zhang. Nine twin rooms from Sept. 9th to 11th, two nights, is that correct?
- G: Yes, exactly.
- C: All right. Miss Zhang, would you mind filling in the registration form?
- G: OK. (Filling out the form) Is it all right?
- C: Thank you, Miss Zhang. Please sign at the bottom on the right hand side.
- G: Sure. Here you are.
- C: Thank you. And could you show me your group visa?
- G: Of course. Here you are.
- C: Thank you. Here are the keys to the rooms. All the rooms are on the ninth floor, most of which face south.
- G: Good.
- C: Do you need morning call service?
- G: Yes. Please make it at 7:00 a.m. for tomorrow morning and 8:00 a.m. for the next day.
- C: Here are the breakfast vouchers for your breakfast buffet. The breakfast will be served at the dining hall on the second floor from 7:00 to 9:00 a.m.
- G: Thank you.
- C: Do you have any luggage? I can get some attendants to send them up to your rooms.
- G: It's very kind of you to say so.



- C: We are always at your service.
- G: Thank you.
- C: Have a nice stay here.

登记入住酒店

(C=前台, G=导游)

前台: 早上好, 先生。欢迎光临我们酒店。可以帮您吗?

导游: 是的。我们要登记入住。

前台: 您有预订吗?

导游:有的。我预订了九间房。

前台: 能告诉您的名字吗?

导游: 张玲, Z-H-A-N-G L-I-N-G, 来自中国国际旅行社。我 8 月 20 号预定的。

前台: 我查查。(过了一会儿)对不起,让您久等了,张小姐。没错,9个双人间,住两 晚,即从9月9号到9月11号。

导游: 是的, 没错。

前台: 好的,张小姐,请填写这张入住登记表,好吗?

导游:好的。(填表)可以吗?

前台:谢谢,张小姐。请在右下角签字。

导游: 可以。给你。

前台:谢谢。能出示一下您的团体签证吗?

导游: 当然。给你。

前台:谢谢。这是房间钥匙。所有房间都在9楼,其中大部分房间朝南。

导游:很好。

前台:需要叫早服务吗?

导游:需要。明天请在早上7点,其它请在早上8点。

前台:这是早餐券。早餐在二楼餐厅,时间从早上7点到9点。

导游:谢谢。

前台: 有行李吗? 我可以叫服务员吧它们送到房间。

导游:谢谢你。

前台: 随时为您效劳。

导游:谢谢。

前台:希望您们在这儿住得愉快。

II. Translate the following sentences into English

- 1. 我叫谢芳,已在你们酒店预定了16个人的用房,其中六间标间,两间双人间。 I'm Xie Fang. I've made reservations at your hotel for 16 persons, six rooms with twin beds, two double rooms.
- 2. 我们早上的用餐时间是上午7:00—10:30。如果需要叫早,请通知我们。



Breakfast time at our hotel is between 7:00 a.m. to 10:30 a.m. Please tell us if you need morning calls.

- 3. 如果今晚想外出的话,请务必去服务台拿张宾馆的名片,以防走失。 If you want to go out this evening, you should get a hotel card at the front desk in case you'll get lost.
- 4. 今晚我们入住的酒店是一家四星级宾馆,离市区只有10分钟的车程。 This evening we will stay in a four-star hotel, which is only ten minutes away from the city center by car.
- 5. 所有的房间都配有网线,小冰箱,并备有两瓶免费的矿泉水。 Each room is provided with high speed Internet access, a small refrigerator and 2 bottles of mineral water for free.

II. Translate the following passages into Chinese.

- 1. Huaya International Hotel is a deluxe ecological garden hotel with South China Garden and a modern golf course. The hotel was officially titled Five-Star Hotel by National Tourism Administration on March 12th, 2007. Located at Wanjiali Middle Road, Changsha, it is only 20 minutes' drive to Huanghua Airport, 10 minutes' to the train station and 5 minutes' to the Beijing-Zhuhai expressway from our hotel, so you can see we have pretty convenient transportation. With an area of about 120 thousand square meters, we boast a 19-story building (No.1 Building) and a deluxe villa, including 560 split-level rooms and perfect dinning and entertainment facilities.
- 2. Facilities for all kinds of conferences are available here in the hotel. There is also an International Multifunctional Hall, which can contain about 800 people; the total area is 1 700 sqm, equipped with 4+1 translation system, movable stage, advanced video system, notebooks etc. It is accompanied with meeting, negotiation and different kinds of conference rooms. The first class equipment could offer the best service for guests from all over the world.

III. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- T: Miss Xie, I want to go to the <u>shopping center</u> (商业区) of the city. Is it far from here?
- G: Not too far. It only takes you more than ten minutes to walk there (走路去只要十几分钟), and you can also take a taxi.
- T: Thank you. How about the local special snacks? (这里有些什么特色小吃?)
- G: There is a food street there, providing a colorful mix of cuisine, especially hot food. (有各 种 色彩的美食品,特别是鲜辣的食品。)
- T: Hot food? I like it. You can try tasty shrimp or tasty snake, strong-smelling fermented bean curd, which are well-known local snacks. (这些都是闻名遐迩的当地小吃).
- T: Thank you again.
- G: That's all right.

Unit Four

Tour Arrangement 第四单元 旅游安排

俗语

万事开头难

Introduction

行程安排是旅游服务机构为旅游者设计的旅游活动路线。阅读行程指南的读者通常是游客或潜在的游客。一份好的行程指南将帮助游客了解旅行的内容,以便游客做好必要的心理和物质准备。所以,对旅行社和游客而言,商议好旅行细节安排是满足游客需要,以免旅行中出现麻烦的基础。当客人接受了旅行社的初步方案后,旅行社应当将行程安排的副本送达当地旅行机构。在旅游团到达当地之前,全陪导游或地陪导游要再次确认行程安排表。如果有改变,能够及时调整,如果没有改变,导游应严格执行该旅游行程安排。

Discussion

- 1. Why should the local guide reconfirm the itinerary with the tour leader?

 They should try to satisfy the tourists' needs and avoid any confusion during the travel.
- 2. What do you think are the elements of an itinerary required to determine the choice of a travel product?

Destination, services and price.



Part One Situational Dialogue

谈论旅游路线

(L=领队, G=地陪)

领队:您好,我是 Albert White。您是哪一位?

导游: 我是中国国际旅行社的 Nancy Wu。对不起, 打扰您啦。

领队:没关系,Nancy。找我有什么事啊?

导游: 是的, Mr. White。我想与您核实一下旅游行程。您现在有空吗?

领队: 当然有。这也正是我想与您谈论的。我现在就去您的房间。

导游:好。我的房间号是8019。过会儿见。

领队:过会儿见。

(几分钟后, Mr. White 敲 Nancy 的房门。)

导游: 请进。

领队:谢谢。请问这个旅游行程是最终的行程安排吗?

导游:不大可能会改变了。但我们是否再确认一下,确保所有事情都妥当。

领队:行,请说。

导游:好的。我们再回顾一下。你们会在北京呆五天。在京期间,你们会游览北京城, 参观长城、故宫博物院、颐和园、雍和宫,游览天安门广场、鸟巢和水立方, 欣赏京剧,去王府井大街购物。然后你们乘飞机去西安。你们会在西安呆三天。

领队: 是的。在西安,我们将游览华清池、秦始皇兵马俑、秦始皇帝陵、攀登华山和西 安古城墙。

导游: 是的, 然后飞往武汉, 再从武汉乘游轮去重庆。

领队: 你能告诉我乘船要多久?

导游:两天。我保证你将会被长江风光所陶醉。

领队:我相信游客们会非常向往。

导游: 在重庆呆一天后就去南京,那儿有更多惊喜在等着你们呢。

领队:确实。南京会停留几天呢?

导游:只有两天。然后你将在上海度过四天。参观上海世界博览会,豫园,在外滩上漫 步。最后,在9月28日乘飞机离开上海回美国。整个行程为18天。对吗?

领队:对。但大多数游客想多花一些间在上海购物,你的意见?

导游:没问题。我想他们在登机前会有几个小时去购物。

领队:很好。感谢你的费心安排。

导游:好的。希望你的团队为长时间的旅行作好准备。如果游客有什么问题或个人计划, 请提前通知我。

领队:没问题。我们会按行程安排行事。

导游: 非常谢谢你们的合作。

领队: 也谢谢您的细致周到。这一定是一次愉快的旅程。

导游:谢谢您。要喝点什么吗?

领队:不啦,谢谢。太晚了,我该走了。

导游: 嗯,长途飞行后您应该很累,您需要好好休息。

领队:再见。

导游: 再见。





$igoplus_{igoplus} \mathbb{P}$ art Two $\,$ Guide Speech to Tourists

旅游路线

女士们、先生们,下午好!

现在我们前往酒店,路上大约要一个多小时。你有可能是第一次来北京,所以一定 很想了解详细的安排。在北京,你将入住北京国际饭店。这是一家五星级酒店,位于市 区中心,靠近商业街。所以晚餐后你可以在附近逛一逛。

我们明天早上 8 点半出发,所以大家要在 7 点起床。美式自助早餐营业时间从早上 7 点到 8 点。我们会订好叫早服务,所以尽管安心睡觉。北京是中国的首都,从古到 今,都是中国的政治、文化和经济中心。游觅行程从故宫博物院开始,参观故宫博物院,至少需要花半天时间。然后我们在房山餐馆用午餐。下午一点半,前往天安门广场,概述一下共产主义在中国的影响。你将在广场上徜徉,欣赏一系列礼堂式建筑和历史遗迹。从天安门广场,我们步入紫禁城。紫禁城也叫做故宫,面积超过 180 英亩,耸立着众多高大的建筑,你会观赏到中国历代的古董和珍宝。下午 6 点半,在 Kao Rou Ji 餐馆晚餐。此外,什刹海的夜景也独具魅力,你可以在沿河而列、风格各异的酒吧里流连。

第三天,大家起床用过早餐后,8点30出发去长城。参观长城半天时间远远不够, 所以只能推荐去一个最有吸引力的景点。从长城返回,在全聚德用餐后,去王府井大街 逛一逛街景。爬完长城大家会很疲劳,所以晚上就不安排活动了。

第四天也会是很有意思的一天。上午,参观雍和宫,这是北京有名的佛寺,每逢农 历初一、初十、十五和三十,上午都会举行例行的法会。在莫斯科西餐厅用餐后,前往 颐和园,它是中国园林设计的杰作。我们下午6点半在金鼎轩餐馆晚餐。

第五天,7点半收拾好行李,8点半之前早餐并办理好离店手续。在北京的最后一天,安排大家参观国家大剧院外景,参观国家体育馆(鸟巢)国家游泳馆(水立方)。这些要么是新建,要么是翻新的建筑,是北京现代化的象征。然后我们将乘下午6点半的航班飞往西安。

五天的时间将会使你全方位地大致了解北京——一个迅速发展的、融合历史与现代的大都市。

现在我们进市区了。大家放松放松,欣赏一下北京的景色。十五分钟后,将抵达酒店。



ho hoart Three Supplementary Readings

Chinese Hospitality—Overdone

Exercises: Answer the following questions:

1. Is it considered polite or not if a guest smokes while the host in a Westerner's home is a non-smoker?

It's impolite.

- 2. What does a host in a Chinese home often do if his guest wants to leave? The host usually accompanies the guest to the bus stop or railway station.
- 3. What is considered appropriate in China if the host sends you a generous gift? You should refuse several times at first before you accept it.
- 4. Do most of the western people understand Chinese hospitality? If not, why not? No, they don't. They think that it is indeed overdone and difficult to understand.
- 5. What's your opinion about Chinese hospitality?

 In my opinion, there are a lot of differences between Chinese hospitality and western hospitality. But we should learn to respect each other's culture. There is a good saying: "When in Rome, do as the Romans do."

中国人的好客一过度热情

中国人好客是出名的。如果你对中国的文化有兴趣,你应当体验中国人全套日常待客之道。

客人和主人

在西方,客人会尽力尊重主人。而在中国,客人受到主人极大的尊重和殷勤的款待,主人会鼓励客人不要局促!例如,在西方人家里,没有征求主人同意,客人吸烟是不礼貌的,而通常如果主人不吸烟的话,他不会允许客人吸烟。在中国,拒绝别人在你家里吸烟是不礼貌的。

宾至如归

中国人待客讲究宾至如归。主人通常会把很多东西向客人展示,拿出大量的食品饮料招待客人。在中国,西方的个人独立性观念是陌生的,主随客便会让主人感到被动。

送别

送客人离开是中国的习惯礼节。要送出大门很远! 主人不光要送客人到大街上,还要送他们直到乘上的士或其它交通工具。如果客人是乘火车,那么主人将不仅送到车站,还会呆在月台上直到列车开动。这也许会让习惯于在门口或是其它尽量减少主人麻烦的地方告别的西方人感到尴尬。

仅出于礼貌的谢绝

在中国,客人的谢绝,不论是对陪他到车站,还是安排座位抑或是给他换食物,往



往仅仅是出于他的礼貌,是他不愿显得贪婪或是不愿给主人增添麻烦的一种表示。不论 客人是否乐意干接受, 主人的好意往往都要被再三的拒绝。不管你打算为客人做什么, 他再三拒绝你仍坚持,这样他就认为得到了重视。

赠礼

在中国,主人客人往往相互赠送礼物,礼物的轻重通常取决于价格。西方人不在意 礼物值多少钱,礼物的价值在于心意,在于送礼的时机,在于感情。但是在中国,在礼 物中留下价格标签往往并不是疏忽,而是表明礼物价值的有意之举。有时主人或是不想 受惠太多而再三拒绝礼物,但从另一种角度来说,按受别人慷慨赠送也是一种尊重,一 种友情的象征。

要适应上述所有中国人的礼节对西方人来说是困难的。在绝大多数西方人看来,这 确定有些过分而难以理解。他们更乐意得到友谊交流,而不是过分的款待。毋庸置疑, 中西方在待客之道上有很多不同,但我们应当相互尊重对方的文化习俗。有句话说得好: "入乡随俗"。



hiderspace igwedge art Four $\,$ Abilities and Quality

Directions on Tour Itinerary

Exercises: Answer the following questions:

- 1. What is a complete itinerary made up of?
 - A complete itinerary is composed of tourism transportation, tourism accommodation, catering, sightseeing, entertainment, shopping, guide services and travel insurance.
- 2. Why should an tour itinerary usually include distinguishing scenic spots? Because repetition will weaken the satisfaction of tourists in terms of the laws of diminishing marginal returns.
- 3. What should a tour itinerary be based on except the scenic spots with different features? The cultural background, demands of the different tourists and the tourists' actual situation.
- 4. Why is it inadvisable that the distance between two scenic spots be too far? Because in this way much time and money should be spend on the road.
- 5. What is a positive result of a travel agency?

A successful tour itinerary.

旅游线路指导

旅游线路是旅游产品的重要组成部分,是旅行社提升竞争力的关键因素。它是旅行 社根据市场需要、结合旅行资源和接待任务的实际情况,为旅游者设计的包括整个旅游 过程中全部旅游项目内容和服务的旅游游览路线。一条完整的旅游线路由旅游交通、旅 游住宿、旅游餐饮、游览观光、娱乐项目、购物项目、导游服务和旅游保险八个方面组 成。因此旅游线路设计对旅行社而言通常都是一项非常耗时的事情。在进行某条旅游线

路开发时,首先拓展人员要有领先的概念,从而发现有鲜明特色的景点。同时,旅游者 的要求,中间商的建议和所蕴藏的商机利益也是旅行社在进行旅游线路开发的重要因素。

一般来说一条旅游线路不会设计相同的旅游景点。根据满足效应递减规律,重复一 般会减弱旅游者的满足程度,除非有特殊的情况。例如,如果在北京旅游,旅行社会将 颐和园,故宫编在同一天的行程中,虽然重复了性质相同、景色相近的旅游点,但是因 为颐和园,故宫等景点具有鲜明的中国文化特色,也是旅游者到北京旅游的目的。西安 也是例外。

还有,旅行社还应根据旅游者不同的文化背景、旅游需求来设计旅游线路。例如去 湖南旅游,线路可分为红色旅游线路、自然风景游、历史名胜游。若因为敬仰伟人而来, 就安排长沙、韶山、花明楼等旅游线路; 若想饱览美丽的自然风光, 则安排武陵源风景 名胜区旅游线路; 若对历史文化感兴趣就安排湖南省博物馆—岳麓书院的旅游线路。

旅行社在择点数量上也有一定的规定,一般说来,是上午2个景点——午饭——下 午 2 个景点。再根据旅游者的实际情况安排旅游线路。如果在一个旅游团中,老人占大 多数, 甚至是整个旅游团都是老人, 旅行社就会适当地减少旅游景点, 或者安排比较舒 适的景点。相反,若旅游团中青年旅游者占多数,则相应地安排适合年轻人特点的旅游 景点或适当增加旅游景点。

从旅游点结构与布局方面而言,同一旅游线路各旅游点间的距离不宜太远,以免将 大量时间和金钱耗费在旅途中。一般来说,城市间交通耗费的时间不能超过全部旅程时 间的三分之一,但是,在实际中由于交通状况的局限,交通时间往往占全部旅程时间的 二分之一甚至三分之二。这就要求导游服务人员在旅途中,尽量把沿途的风景名胜,具 有浓厚文化背景的自然景观和人文景观介绍给游客,使游客觉得物有所值。

一条成功的旅游线路的设计,要经过旅行社工作人员的精心设计,是旅行社的成果。 旅行社要取得良好的经济效益, 就必须在旅游路线下苦功。



Part Five Consolidation

I. Oral Exercises

A: Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. When and what kind of breakfast will the tourists have on the second day? The tourists will have the American buffet breakfast between 7:00 to 8:00.
- 2. Which scenic spot will the tourists visit first?

The Palace Museum.

- 3. Where will the tourists go at the second night?
 - They will have dinner at Kao Rou Ji Restaurant at about 6:00 p.m. Then they will go to Shichahai, where tourists can enjoy different bars along riverside.
- 4. Where will the tourists eat after climbing the Great Wall? The tourists will eat in Ouaniude.
- 5. On which day will the tourists fly to Xi'an city?



On the fifth day.

B: Ask students to turn the Guide Speech learned into a dialogue including the related contents.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. 旅行社和游客商量好行程对于满足游客的要求、避免旅途中的误解来说是至关重要的。 It is essential for both the travel service and the tourists to discuss the detailed arrangements for a trip so as to satisfy the tourists' needs and avoid any confusion during the travel.
- 2. 我想确认一下 10 月 8 号由北京来湖南的 24 人团的旅游行程安排。
 I want to confirm the tour itinerary for the tour group of 24 persons arriving in Hunan from Beijing on Oct.8 th.
- 3. 如果行程有变的话,请提前通知我们。 If there is any change, inform us of it in advance.
- 4. 我相信游客们一定会被长江沿途的风光迷住。
 I'm sure that the tourists will be attracted by the water scenery along the Yangtze River.
- 5. 今天要参观的许多景点都是新近建造或改造的,是北京现代化的代表之作。 Most of the places we will visit today are either newly constructed or renovated, representative of Beijing's modernity.

II. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

- 1. 北京是一座融合了古典与现代的快速发展的大都市。要想更好地了解北京,你不但要了解它的过去,而且要了解它现在和未来的发展。因此今天为你们安排了特别的旅程。 今天的行程包括游览国家大剧院的外部,西单商业街、中央电视台、国家体育场(鸟 巢)、国家游泳中心及王府井商业街。
- 2. 好好睡一觉,吃完早餐,上午 8:30 准时出发。去长城的路上(1 小时车程)会在一家景泰蓝工厂作短暂停留,欣赏中国最有名的手工艺品。然后去参观中国著名的明十三陵陵墓。中午在尚林餐馆吃午餐,接着去长城。大概下午 5:30 回宾馆,短暂休息后 6:30 去吃北京烤鸭宴。吃完后,回宾馆整理好行李。最后好好享受在北京的最后一夜吧。

III. Fill in the blanks:

(G= Tour Guide; T= Tourist)

- G: Good afternoon, China International Travel Service. May I help you?
- T: Yes. I want to visit Japan this summer vacation. <u>Do you have some travel groups to go there</u> (有去那儿的旅行团吗?)
- G: Yes, we have. You want to go there during the summer vocation, is that right?
- T: Yehh, before August 10th.
- G: Then, how many days would you like for your trip (计划旅行几天呢?)
- T: About a week.



- G: Ok. We have groups to Japan every week, and the whole trip happens to last eight days (整个旅程正好需要八天时间。) Would you like to join us?
- T: How is the schedule?
- G: Well, it icovers all the important scenic spots in Japan (该日程涵盖了日本所有的重要景 点).
- T: Thank you. How much is it?
- G: ¥6 800, including transportation, accommodation and tickets for all scenic spots (包括交 通、食宿及景点门票).
- T: It sounds good. Hum... I decide to join this group.

Module Two

Sightseeing Service 模块二 观光服务

Unit One

Palaces 第一单元 宫殿

俗语

皇帝的女儿不愁嫁

Introduction

宫殿是封建王朝的政治中心,他们的建筑风格既体现了中国古代建筑的共性又体现了皇家建筑的个性。中国古代帝王在建朝之初,首先考虑的就是营造豪华壮丽的宫殿显示国威;北京故宫是中国宫殿最杰出的代表。就建筑群体而言,它有庞大的规模、对称均衡的布局、森严的防卫系统、庄严的建筑环境氛围。就单体建筑而言庄重庞大、富丽堂皇,处处体现了皇权的威势和对人民的威慑力量。宫殿制度的形成和发展,深刻地体现了中国古代的体制和神秘文化、尊卑等级和吉祥意识。在宫殿建筑上深刻地留下了历代王朝政治、经济和文化的烙印。

Discussion

- What are palaces used for?
 Palaces are the centers of feudal politics, which embody both the common features of ancient Chinese architecture and the royalty.
- 2. Why did emperors build luxurious and glorious palaces? Because they wanted to show off their powers.



$ightharpoonup \mathbb{P}$ art One Situational Dialogue

游北京

(G=导游: T=游客)

导游:(针对所有游客)先生们、女士们,欢迎大家来到北京!我想向你们介绍一下我的这位中国同事,杨先生是我们的司机。请记住他的车牌号码。我再介绍一下我自己,我叫王红,我来自北京国际旅行社。你们在北京期间,我将做你们的导游。能为大家服务,感到很高兴。我希望我们在一起过得很愉快。这是给大家的旅行社徽章和帽子,为了方便识别队伍请带上他们。希望你们过得愉快!

游客:太好了!天安门周围有些什么样的景点?

导游:天安门广场、毛主席纪念堂、人民英雄纪念碑、人民大会堂、中国革命博物馆、劳动人们文化宫、中山公园等。现在我们已经到了天安门;面前就是天安门广场。

游客:哎呀,多么宽阔的地方呀!占地面积是多少?

导游:是的,这是世界上最大的广场;占地面积是98英亩。在春天还是一个放风筝的好地方!

游客: 噢, 真是这样的!

导游: 你们看到了那边的建筑了吗?

游客: 是的,真宏伟。我想一定是人民大会堂吧。

导游: 是的。全部建设用了不到一年的时间。工程始于 1958 年,在 1959 年完工,总共 花了 10 个月的时间。

游客: 真的! 这简直是一个奇迹。

导游:天安门广场东侧、东长安街南侧是中国国家博物馆;是一座系统展示中华民族文化历史的综合性博物馆。

游客: 哦,它刚好在人民大会堂的正对面。

游客:女士们!先生们!现在你们可以去自由参观两个小时。我在这里等你们,请按时返回。祝你们玩得开心!

Some useful sentences on a city tour

1. Please wait for a minute. I am going to buy the tickets. 请等一会,我去买票。

2. Here are your tickets. 这是你们的票。

3. How long will the sightseeing be? 游览时间多长?

4. The duration/time of sightseeing is 2 hours. 游览时间两个小时。



- 5. Please meet at the gate at 6 o'clock. 请六点钟在大门口集合。
- 6. Our bus number is 66368767. 我们的车牌号码是 66368767。
- 7. After the tour we will be returning for lunch to the hotel. Lunch will be in the Ballroom. 旅游后我们将回旅馆吃午餐。午餐在宴会厅。
- 8. This afternoon you have a choice of activities—at 3 p.m. coaches depart to the Summer Palace. They then continue onto the Friendship Store for shopping. Or at 3:45 p.m. buses will leave the hotel and go directly to the Friendship Store. Which option do you choose? 下午活动有两种选择一下午3点有车开往颐和园,然后,再去友谊商场或下午3点45 分汽车从旅馆出发,直接开往友谊商场。请做出选择。
- 9. There are money-changing facilities at the Friendship Store. 在友谊商场有兑换货币服务。
- 10. Breakfast tomorrow starts at 07:30 and is available until 08:45. Departure for the visit to Tian'an men Square is at 09:00. Coaches will depart from the entrance of the hotel. 明天早餐时间是07:30 到08:45。去天安门广场参观出发时间是09:00。车子从旅馆门 口出发。

Some Background References on Beijing City

- 1. The five local cuisines in Beijing 北京五大地方名菜
- (1) Imperial Court Cuisine 宫廷菜
- (2) Beijing Roast Duck 北京烤鸭
- (3) Monggolian Hot Pot 涮羊肉
- (4) Tan-style Cuisine 谭家菜
- (5) Barbecued Meat 烤肉宛
- 2. The five big commercial Districts in Beijing 北京五大商业区
- (1) Wangfujing Commercial District 王府井商业区
- (2) Xidan Commercial District 西单商业区
- (3) Dashila District 大栅栏商业区
- (4) Longfusi Commercial District 隆福寺商业区
- (5) Commercial District 商业区



lacksquare Part Two $\,$ A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

关于城市旅游的几点建议

女士们! 先生们!

今天很高兴成为你们的导游。这是故宫,又名紫禁城。整座阜宫金碧辉煌雄伟壮观,

是世界上最大,保存最为完整的的皇家宫殿建筑群。北京故宫位于北京城中心,前通天 安门,后靠景山,东傍王府井,西临中南海。故宫博物馆始建于1406年,在1420年落 成。在500年间,宫殿多次修复。城南北长961米,东西宽753米,占地面积72万平方 米。紫禁城四面环有高约 10 米的城墙和宽约 50 米的护城河,将皇宫重重护卫,只留四 处出口。整个紫禁城全部是红柱黄瓦,尽显宏伟特色。紫禁城分成两部分既前朝部分和 后寝部分。"前朝部分"以太和、中和、保和三大殿为中心,两侧辅以文华、武英两殿。 "后寝部分"则以乾清、交泰、坤宁三宫,东西六宫和御花园为中心。

今天我们选择从南到北的路线参观紫禁城。参观紫禁城需要买票(或者买全票),注 意把票带在身上,每到博物馆的不同区域都需要检查;如果你把票弄丢了,在其它新的 关口处都需要补票。现在我们已经到达了紫禁城的正门午门,俗称五凤楼,东西北三面 城台相连,环抱成一个方形广场。当皇帝去太和殿时,鸣钟以庆贺重大仪式。当皇帝去 祭祖时,通过击鼓的方式告诉大家。现在,我们正在靠近金门河上汉白玉砌成的五座石 桥,叫内金水桥;造型优美、刻有云龙文饰。内金水河的河水是从紫禁城西北角的护城 河引进紫禁城内,全长2000多米。现在我们来到了太和门,他是紫禁城"前朝"三大殿 的正门,也是紫禁城最大的一座宫门。太和门里,是一个宽敞的封闭式庭院广场;丹壁 是一座宏伟壮丽的三层平台,位于广场北端。紫禁城最大的宫殿太和殿坐落在丹壁之上。 我们一起去参观吧!眼前的是太和殿。"太和"二字是宇宙间的一切关系都得到协调的意 思。太和殿俗称"金銮殿",是紫禁城内集中体现帝制权利的象征。中和殿位于太和殿之 后,是一座平面呈方形的四角攒尖顶方厅建筑。其深广各三间,建筑面积 580 平方米。 中和殿基本上是为太和殿的活动做准备的场所;皇帝去太和殿之前先在此稍作停留。现 在我们来到了保和殿。皇帝在此宴请王宫贵族和京中文武大臣; 也是科举考试最高一级 殿试的场所。乾清门是后三宫的正门。在清代,这里是皇帝"御门听政"的地方。现在 我们来到了交泰殿,位于乾清、坤宁两宫之间,含有天地交合、安康美满之意。该殿是 明清两朝皇后过生日举办庆祝活动的地方。现在让我们去坤宁宫,它是皇后的寝宫,被 称为"中宫"。现在我们一起参观御花园,御花园建于明代,为皇家宫廷花园,面积约1.2 万平方米。园内古柏参天,环境极为幽雅。继续往前走。现在我们来到了紫禁城的后门 神午门。上设钟、鼓,起晨钟暮鼓的报时作用。

大家休息一个小时,也可以去参观故宫内其它景点或四处走走。



Part Three Supplementary Reading

A Brief Introduction of Beijing

Exercises: Answer the following questions:

- 1. What do you think of status on Beijing? Beijing is the capital of the People's Republic of China. It is the political, economical and cultural center, and also one of the international communication hubs of the country.
- 2. Where is Beijing located?



Beijing is located at 39° 56′ N and 116° 20′ E, on the northwest edge of the North China Plain.

- 3. What do you think of geomorphic feature? Its terrain is high in the northwest and low in the southeast.
- 4. What do you think of climatic feature? Beijing is a typical temperate continental monsoon climate with four distinct seasons, moreover spring and autumn is shorter.
- 5. Which scenic spots are on the list of the UNESCO World Heritage Sites? The Forbidden City, the Great Wall, the Peking Man Site at Zhoukoudian, the Temple of Heaven (Tiantan Park), the Summer Palace and the Ming Tombs (Shisanling) are on the list of the UNESCO World Heritage Sites.

北京简介

北京是中华人民共和国的首都,是政治、经济和文化中心,也是国际交流的枢纽。 北京中央位于北纬 39 度 56 分和东经 116 度 20 分,西北地势较高,东南地势较低。处于 华北平原西北边缘,北京与天津相邻,并与天津一起被河北省环绕。北京有16个区、县 管辖,占地面积 16 807.8 平方公里,其中城区面积 87.1 平方千米。属典型的温带大陆性 季风气候,四季分明,春秋较短。北京有记载的历史作可以追溯到3000多年前。北京成 为首都有 700 多年的历史,属于中国七大古都之一。在这著名的历史文化名城,文化遗 产和风景名胜比比皆是; 古代的宫殿、寺庙、公园、古老的佛塔、石刻、皇家园林和陵 墓,而有许多历史人物的故居并建有现代博物馆、纪念馆等。北京一共有7309个文化遗 产包括 42 处国家保护遗产和 222 城市保护遗产,其中紫禁城、长城、周口店北京人遗址、 天坛(天坛)、颐和园和十三陵被列入联合国教科文组织列入世界遗产名录。北京 200 多 个景区对游客开放,如紫禁城、北海公园、十三陵、长城、雍和宫、潭柘寺、香山,圆 明园、龙庆峡,石花洞等。



Cultural Criteria

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. How do you understand the criteria for inclusion of cultural properties on the World Heritage List?
 - The criteria for inclusion of cultural properties on the World Heritage List should always be seen in relations to one another and should be considered in the context of the definition set out in Articles 1 of the Convention.
- 2. How do you judge the World Cultural Heritage? A monument, group of buildings or site which is nominated for inclusion on the World

Heritage List will be considered to be of outstanding universal value for the purposes of the Convention when the Committee finds that it meets one or more of six provided criterion and the test of authenticity.

文化标准

《世界遗产名录》收录文化遗产诸条标准,应能显示出相互之间的关联,并且均应符合《世界文化和自然遗产公约》第一条之规定。

当世界遗产委员会会发现,列写的某一文物、建筑群或遗址能满足下列标准中的一条或多条,并通过真实性测评,这一文物即被视为具有《世界文化和自然遗产公约》所主张的"突出普遍价值"。由世界遗产委员会工作守则明文规定的文化标准,要求每一入选文化遗产必须:

- 一、代表一种独有的艺术成就,代表人类创造性天才的杰作;
- 二、在历史上某一时期,或世界某一文化区域内,对建筑艺术、文物艺术、城镇规划或景观设计的发展产生过重大影响;
- 三、能为一种仍在或已消逝的文明或文化传统提供一种独特、或至少是特殊的见证; 四、可作为某类建筑物或建筑风格或景观的突出范例,以生命人类历史上一个(或 几个)重要阶段;

五、可作为传统的民居社会或土地使用的杰出范例,代表一种(或几种)文化,尤 其是当其在不可逆转的变化冲击之下已趋脆弱;与具特殊普遍意义的事件、现行传统, 与思想、信仰或具有突出普遍意义的文学。



$\triangleright \mathbb{P}$ art Five Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to learned guide speech.

- 1. What are the features of Chinese palaces?

 Palaces embody both the common features of ancient Chinese architecture and the royalty.
- 2. What are the main scenic spots around Tian'an men? Tian'anmen Square, Chairman Mao Memorial Hall, Monument to the Peoples's Heroes, the Great Hall of the People, the Museum of the Chinese Revolution, Working People's Palace of Culture, Zhongshan Park, etc.
- 3. Where is the Forbidden City located?

 The Forbidden City is located in the heart of Beijing. In front of it is the gate of Tian'anmen.

 At the back is the Scenery Hill. To the east is St. Wangfujing, and to the west is Zhongnanhai.
- 4. Which part in the Forbidden City is the symbol of imperial power? "Supreme Harmony" means that the relations between various things in universe are in perfect harmony. Popularly known as Jinluan Dian, it is the symbol of imperial power.
- 5. What are China's seven great ancient capitals?
 Beijing, Nanjing, Luoyang, Chang'an(Xi'an), Kaifeng, Hangzhou and Anyang.



II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 请 11 点钟在大门口集合。

Please meet at 11 o'clock at the gate.

2. 这是你们的票,请保存好。

Here are your tickets. Please keep them.

3. 从这上面,我们可以鸟瞰这个城市。

From up here, we can have a bird's eye view of the city.

4. 恐怕四个小时的时间不够我们游览这个公园所有的地方。

I am afraid four hour's time is not enough for us to see all the places in the park.

5. 我们想坐游船可以欣赏河岸美丽的景色。

We want to take a boat ride so as to enjoy the magnificent sights along the river.

III. Translate the following passages into Chinese.

- 1. 在三天的时间里,我们游览了天安门广场、紫禁城、颐和园、天坛、明十三陵以及长城,他们都是被联合国教科文组织认定的世界自然文化遗产。
- 2. 我想大家之所以开心,完全得益于我们司机的努力工作、全陪出色的组织能力以及每一位成员的合作和理解。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue

- T: It is a new park, isn't?
- G: Yes, it was opened last year. (它去年才开业)
- T: Why is it called Window of the World? (为什么它叫世界之窗?)
- G: Well, generally speaking (总体来说), the park is a window on the world history, a window on the world civilization and a window on the world's tourist attractions as well.
- T: Oh, how wonderful! 文明
- G: It is a place of the marvelous sights of the world (世界奇观), natural landscapes, floklore and social customs as well as ethnic songs and dances. It is an absolutely fantastic world where tourists can find much pleasure. (游客能够找到许多乐趣的美妙世界)。
- T: Oh, that's great!
- G: This is the World Square. That is the Area of Asia. This is the Area of Europe. That is the Area of America.



Altars and Temples 第二单元 坛庙

俗语

学而不思则罔, 思而不学则殆

Introduction

坛庙是中国古代专供祭祀之用的建筑。中国古代社会"礼"的要求制约建筑的结构和类型,因此,坛庙也可以称为"礼制建筑"。坛庙建筑不同于一般宗教性质的寺观建筑,他们主要是作为对天地和祖先的尊敬和感恩而举行各种祭祀活动的场所。庄严神秘的坛庙建筑在古人心目中是神灵与苍生的心灵感应场,是进行人神对话与交流的圣地,具有极高的历史、科学与艺术文化价值。

Discussion

- 1. What were Altars and temples used for in ancient China?

 Altars and temples were used for worship or memorial purposes in ancient China.
- Why were Altars and temples called "ritual architectures"?
 Because some requirements on rites restricted their structure and type in Chinese ancient society.



游山东

导游:下午好!欢迎你们来到山东。欢迎你们来到济南。我叫李红,很高兴成为你们的导游。

游客: 李小姐, 下午好! 你能给我们简单介绍一下济南吗?



导游: 当然可以,济南是山东省的省会,位于京沪铁路线和青济线的交汇处。

游客: 它为什么叫济南呢?

导游:济南意思是济河之南。济河早在几百年前就干涸了,但名字却流传下来了。

游客: 这里以什么而著名?

导游:这里主要以泉水和佛寺著名,因此,人们称它"泉城"。

游客: 孔子是中国最伟大的思想家和教育家, 对吧?

导游:对。孔子的故乡曲阜离这儿不远,曲阜是孔子的家乡和墓地。

游客: 泰山是中国五大圣山之一, 是吧?

导游: 是的, 在古代, 皇帝来这儿祭祀天地。

游客: 你能介绍一下它的具体位置吗?

导游: 泰山位于山东省的中部,省会济南之北,曲阜"圣城"之南。

游客: 泰山有多高?

导游: 最高峰海拔 1545 米

游客:据说徒步登山是最令人满意的登山方式,是吧?

导游: 是的, 因为泰山有 30 座古寺庙和 66 个有完好记录的景点。

游客: 我们想去泰山和曲阜。你能为我安排一次旅行吗?

导游: 有一个两天的包价旅游。

游客:这个旅行多少钱。

导游:每人760元。

游客: 它包括什么?

导游:包括车费和三餐。

游客: 我们能让你们预订这旅程吗? 导游: 是的,我们可以为你们做预订。



Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

孔 庙

女士们、先生们:

欢迎来到曲阜孔子的家乡。作为你们的导游,我感到非常高兴。这是我们共同学习 的好机会。

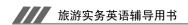
首先,向大家简要介绍一下曲阜的历史、文物概况以及孔子的业绩。曲阜是一座 有五千年文明的文化古城,位于山东省西南部。曲阜作为历代帝王、文人名士仰慕的 地方,遗留下大量的文物古迹,其中首要的就是三孔即孔庙、孔府、孔林的合称。人 们常说:"江南出才子,江北出圣人"。曲阜是春秋鲁国国都,是儒学先师孔子诞生和 活动的地方。中国悠久灿烂的汉文化上的历史地位,两千年来无人可及。孔子作为儒 学创始人,他确定了儒学的人文精神,主张以天下为己任的使命感:而承担这种使命 在于道德人格。这一精神对后世产生了深远的影响。他创造的儒家学说却被历朝历代



奉为正统思想,成为中国文化的主流。现在,我们去参观孔庙,它位于曲阜市的中心, 是我国历代封建王朝祭祀孔子的庙宇,是一组具有东方建筑特色、规模宏大的古代建 筑群。孔庙的规模建制可与帝王宫殿相比。现在的孔庙是明清两代完成的。这个建筑 群面积之广大、气魄之宏伟、时间之久远、保持之完整,被古建筑学家成为世界建筑 史上"孤例"。

我们来到了孔庙门前的第一座石坊叫"金声玉振坊"。"金声"、"玉振"表示奏乐的 全过程,以击钟(金声)开始,以击磬(玉振)告终,以此象征孔子思想集古圣先贤之 大成,颂扬孔子对汉文化的巨大贡献。在金声玉振坊后,有一座单孔石拱桥。让我们去 看看。哦,桥的两侧各立一石碑,上刻有"官员人等至此下马",以示对孔子、孔庙的 尊敬。我们来到了进入孔庙的第一道门,棂星门。棂(灵)星是主管教育和文学之星。 门的命名意为尊孔如同尊天。这是孔庙的第二道门圣时门,始建于明永乐十三年(1415)。 根据《孟子》记载"孟子曰:孔子,圣之时者也"。意思就是在圣人中间孔子是最适合 时代的。圣时门只有在皇帝来祭祀或历代"衍圣公"出生时才打开此门。这是孔庙的第 三道大门弘道门,建于明洪武十年(1377)。该名取自《论语》"人能弘道",即能指挥 创造一切; 赞颂孔子总结了先贤先圣的经验, 尤其弘扬了尧舜禹汤, 文武周公之道。这 是大中门,过了这个门,即进入孔庙第四进庭院。该命名取孔子思想中庸之意。入大中 门,迎面为同文门。过了同文门院北端就是闺文阁。这就是藏书丰富、建筑独特的孔庙 藏书楼。过了闺文阁是孔庙的第六进庭院。院落狭长伫立着 13 座碑亭,南八北五。专 为保存皇帝的御制石碑而建,习称"御碑亭"。杏坛相传是孔子当年讲学的地方。乾隆 皇帝书杏坛赞,刻碑立于其内。大成殿是孔庙的主殿,它和故宫太和殿、岱庙宋天贶殿 并称为东方三大殿。该殿高 32 米,阔 54 米,深 34 米。大殿结构简洁整齐,巍峨壮观。 四周廊下环立 28 根雕花石柱,均以整石刻成。柱高 5.98 米, 直径 0.81 米。两山及后檐 的 18 根八棱石柱,以云龙为饰,每面浅刻九条团龙,每柱 72 条。前檐的十根为深浮雕, 每柱两龙对翔,中刻宝珠,四绕云焰,柱脚用山石点缀,用波涛衬托。十根龙柱两两相 对,各具变化,无一雷同,造型优美生动,龙姿栩栩如生。这是曲阜独有的石刻艺术瑰 宝。据说皇帝来曲阜祭祀孔子时,石柱均用黄陵包裹,怕皇帝看到不高兴,因为皇宫无 此气派。大成殿正中供奉五大圣人、十二位先哲。中间是孔子雕像,座高 3.35 米身穿 王服。大成殿建于两层台基上,高两米,东西宽约 4.5 米,南北深约 35 米。露台是祭 祀时歌舞行礼的场所。大成殿后是供奉孔夫人齐官氏的专祠一孔庙三大建筑之一的寝 殿。齐官氏,宋国人,19 岁嫁与孔子,先孔子七年去世。殿内神龛木雕游龙戏凤,精 美异常,龛内上书"至圣先师夫人神位"的木碑。单独建在寝宫之后的是圣迹殿,它是 以保存记载孔子一生事迹的石刻连环画圣迹图而得名的大殿。孔庙西路是祭祀孔子父亲 和母亲的地方。

女士们,先生们! 孔庙似历史知识的学堂。由于时间的限制我们只参观主要的部分, 我也是扼要介绍孔庙。孔子是圣人,也是伟大的旅游家,周游列国 14 年,收集了宝贵资 料,欢迎再来曲阜观光!谢谢大家合作!





► Part Three Supplementary Readings

Temple of Heaven

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- Where does the Temple of Heaven lie?
 The temple lies at the east of Inside Street Yongdingmen Gate.
- 2. What was the Temple of Heaven used for in Ming and Qing Dynasties?
 The complex is the typical architectural art of both Ming and Qing Dynasties, an indispensable part of Beijing as a historical and cultural capital.
- 3. How much is the total area of the Temple of Heaven?

 The total area of the temple is 273 hectares, three times larger than Forbidden City.
- 4. How is the Temple of Heaven made up of?

 Two walls separate the temple into an outer court and an inner court. The north wall is taller and semicircular, while the south wall is lower and rectangular, in accordance with the belief of "round heaven above square earth" and "lofty heaven and humble earth".
- When was the Temple of Heaven inscribed on the World Heritages List?In December 1988, the UNESCO inscribed it on the World Heritages List.



Confucius' Ideas about Education

Discussion: Answer the following questions.

- Why was his education successful?
 Because he can teach students in a special way and proposed a complete set of principles concerning study.
- 2. How do you understand the saying "Do not give others what you do not want yourself"? Treating others is just like treating yourself. If you think a thing is not valuable, you shouldn't give others.
- 3. Do you think people are born with no difference?
 Yes, I think so. But the environment and education of one's growth can create people's personality and behavior.
- 4. How do you understand Confucius is a humanitarian?

 He thought that one should love one's parents, respect elders, be kind to brothers, and generous and understanding to others. It can show he was a humanitarian.
- 5. Why was Confucianism regarded as the orthodox ideas?



Because his ideas are helpful for feudal society to consolidate their rules.



- 1. Saint Kong 孔圣人
- 2. Most Holy and Foremost Perfect Teacher 大成至圣先师
- 3. The Analects of Confucius 论语

《论语》是儒家学派的经典著作之一,由孔子的弟子及其再传弟子编撰而成。成书时间大约在春秋战国时期。它以语录体和对话文体为主,记录了孔子及其弟子言行,集中体现了孔子的政治主张、论理思想、道德观念及教育原则等。故《论语》成为后人研究孔子思想的主要资料。

- 4. Studying without thinking leads to confusion; thinking without studying leads to laziness. 学而不思则罔,思而不学则殆。
- 5. Do not give others what you do not want yourself. 已所不欲,勿施于人。
- 6. Bible 圣经

《圣经》是基督教的正式经典,又称《新旧约全书》。被奉为教义和神学的根本依据。内容主要包括历史、传奇、律法、诗歌、论述、书函等。将这些书定为正典圣书者认为各书具有神的启示和旨意。《圣经》分为《旧约》与《新约》两大部分。《旧约》本为犹太教的正式经典,后被基督教承认为圣经,但基督教认为,旧约是上帝通过摩西与以色列人所订,新约则是通过耶稣基督与信者订立的。

7. All those things which you would have men do to you, even so do you to them.你想别人对你怎样,你就怎样对别人。



Part Five Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

1. Can you introduce Qufu briefly?

Let me introduces Qufu briefly to everybody from the history, the cultural relic survey and Confucius outstanding achievements. Qufu is a city with a history of 5 000 years. It is located in the southwest of the province. Qufu has numerous cultural sites, among which the most famed are the "Three Kongs", namely Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion. Qufu was the capital of the State of Lu during the 11 th century B.C. And also the hometown of Confucius, the founder of the Confucian School, which is the ideological root of all varieties of Chinese culture.

- Who is the originator of Confucianism? Confucius.
- 3. What left a profound influence on later generations in Confucius's life?

 As the originator of Confucianism, Confucius defined his philosophy of humanism. He

thought it was very necessary to have the sense of mission to bear in mind the world; moreover, to undertake the mission lies in personal moral.

- 4. Why have Confucius's thoughts left a profound influence on later generations?

 The Confucianism he established was adopted as the orthodox philosophy in all dynasties, thus became the main stream of Chinese culture.
- 5. What is the Sage Exhibition Hall famous for? It is famous for the serial stone carvings of Confucius' life.

II. Translate the following into English.

- 1. 灵岩寺是中国四大名寺之一。
 - Lingyan Temple is one of the four finest temples in China.
- 2. 每年9月6日至8日, 泰安举行登山节。
 - From September 6 to 8, there is the Mountain Climbing Festival in Tai'an.
- 3. 曲阜五分之一的人姓孔。
 - One-fifth of the people in Qufu are surnamed Kong.
- 4. 孔夫子生活在公元前 551 年至 479 年之间的春秋战国时期。 Confucius lived from 551 to 479 B.C. during the Spring and Autumn Period.
- 5. 潍坊每年举行的风筝节很有名。
 - Weifang is famous for its international Kite Festival every year.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

世界遗产委员会对天坛的评价:

- 1. 天坛是建筑和园林设计的一个代表作,简洁、生动地表达了一种对一个伟大文明进步 产生过伟大影响的宇宙观;
- 2. 天坛具有象征意义的规划设计,对远东许多国家的建筑和规划曾产生过深远的影响;
- 3. 中国连续了两千多年的封建统治,天坛的规划和设计思想象征它的合理性。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- G: We've arrived at our destination (我们已经到达目的地), Pingwu Bao'en Temple. That's the entrance of the temple.
- T: What a beautiful gate!Look at the board. <u>These dragons look so lively as if they were flying into the sky.</u> (这些龙刻得活灵活现,好像要腾飞了。)
- G: Yes, the dragon is one of the three wonders in the temple. When you enter the temple, you'll see dragons everywhere (当你进入寺庙,你就会到处看到龙)。So the Temple is "dragon palace".
- T: Amazing! Can you introduce Chinese culture on dragons?
- G: The dragon is an auspicious figure in China. It is the Chinese totem. Chinese call



themselves the offspring of dragons (中国人称呼自己是龙的传人). Let me pass through the gate.

- T: Who are they on both sides of the gate. They look very terrible (他们使人感到太恐怖了).
- G: Don't worry about them. They are statues of Heng and Ha, guardians of the temple, guardians of tourists as well.



- 1. guardian n. 护卫者,保护人
- 2. totem *n*. 图腾, 标识
- 3. offspring n. 儿女, 子孙, 后代
- 4. Pingwu Bao'en Temple 平武报恩寺 平武报恩寺位于四川省平武县境内,距绵阳市区 184 公里。报恩寺即为报答他人恩情 而专门为其修建的寺庙,使后人永不忘记,铭记在心,流芳百世。报恩寺相传始建于 明朝末年或清朝初年, 距今约300多年。
- 5. Heng and Ha 哼哈二将 哼哈二将,为明代小说《封神演义》作者根据佛教守护寺庙的两位门神,附会而成的 两员神将。形象威武凶猛,一名郑伦,能鼻哼白气制敌;一名陈奇,能口哈黄气擒将。

Unit Three

Religious Buildings in China 第三单元 中国宗教建筑

俗语

师傅引进门,修行在个人

Introduction

中国的宗教建筑

中国历史上出现的多种宗教对中国古代文化的发展产生了深远的影响。儒家、道教和佛教是中国的三大主要教派。道教产生于中国本土,老子是道教的创始人,"道"原始的意义就是"路",隐含的意义就是"规则"和"原理"。道教是富有浓厚现实主义色彩的宗教形式,它与佛教、儒学三足鼎立,在中国文化发展史上占有重要地位。武当山道教古建筑群,宫观雄伟,香火旺盛,是明永乐年间由皇帝下昭、按照宫廷建筑标准修建的,显示了华丽的皇家建筑气派。石窟艺术是佛教的重要遗迹,一般为建筑、壁画、彩塑组成的综合体,大多开凿于悬崖绝壁。中国石窟艺术虽然起源于印度,却是在我国民族文化传统的基础上,吸收外来文化、结合民族形式的窑洞和崖墓创造出来的。莫高窟、云冈石窟、龙门石窟三大石窟是我国佛教石窟艺术的代表,而重庆大足石刻则是晚期石窟艺术的代表。喇叭教是佛教中发展于西藏的一个支派。喇叭教建筑不达拉宫,集中体现了以藏族为主,汉、蒙、满各族人民的勤劳智慧和藏族建筑艺术的伟大成就。

Discussion

- 1. What are the three major religions in China? Confucianism, Taoism and Buddhism.
- Why did Taoism take a vital place in the development of Chinese culture?
 Because Taoism stood firm with Buddhism and Confucianism with a strong realistic color.



$hillipsip \mathbb{P}$ art One ight. Situational Dialogue

游西藏

(T=游客, G=导游)

导游:大家早上好!欢迎你们来到西藏,欢迎你们来到拉萨。我叫李英。很高兴成为你们的导游为你们服务。首先,让我来简单介绍一下西藏。它是世界上最神奇的旅游圣地之一,拥有 230 万平方公里的土地面积。西藏独特的文化、有名的寺院以及庄严、壮观的景色使其成为了重要的旅游胜地。拉萨,西藏的首府,走进"世界屋脊"的主要通道。

游客: 李小姐, 早上好! 谢谢你的介绍。你认为西藏人们怎么样?

导游: 我认为藏族人们勇敢、刚毅、豪爽,又十分善良。

游客: 为什么藏族人们爱银器?

导游: 因为他们视白银为圣洁、吉祥、高尚的象征。

游客: 我听说拉萨的寺庙非常有名, 你认为该先看什么?

导游: 如果线路安排得好,我们两天内可以参观完拉萨的寺庙和宫殿。

游客: 最重要的建筑有哪些?

导游: 拉萨市内要参观的主要建筑有大昭寺、不达拉宫、色拉寺和哲蚌寺。

游客: 布达拉是什么意思?

导游: 是"佛山"的意思。

游客: 我明白了。它有多高?

导游: 有13层,高110米,东西长360米。

游客:咱们首先去那儿好吗?

导游: 当然可以。



► Part Two Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

布达拉宫

女士们、先生们!

欢迎你们来中国拉萨观光旅游!你们将欣赏到西藏独特的风光和文化。今天将陪同大家参观举世闻名的布达拉宫。现在让我来简单的介绍一下。

布达拉宫是西藏人民巨大创造力的象征,是雪域高原上独一无二的文化遗产。布达 拉宫耸立在西藏拉萨市红山之上。"布达拉"是梵语音译,又译作"普陀罗"。相传西藏 佛教徒认为红山可与观世音的圣地普陀山相媲美,因此称它第二个普陀罗。布达拉宫是 藏式建筑的杰出代表,也是中华民族古建筑的精华之作。宫殿与山融合,壮观巍峨。红 白相间的宫墙,金碧辉煌的宫顶,充分展示了西藏古建筑的特色。



布达拉宫是中华民族团结和国家统一的铁证。公元七世纪,松赞扬干布统一了西藏, 为了迎娶文成公主, 特在当时的红山上建造了有千间屋子九层楼高的宫殿, 取名布达拉宫。 宫殿建成后经过多次修建和扩建。布达拉宫海拔3700多米,占地面积36万多平方米,建 筑总面积 13 余万平方米,东西长 360 多米,主楼高 117 米,共 13 层,包括宫殿、灵塔殿、 佛殿、经堂、僧舍、庭院等。布达拉宫整个建筑物由白宫、红宫和附属建筑组成。布达拉 宫的范围,除红山上的建筑群外,还包括南北广场、龙王潭,构成一个统一的整体环境。 布达拉宫是当今世界上海拔最高、规模最大的宫殿式建筑群,被誉为"世界屋脊明珠"。

布达拉宫是一座风格独特的佛教建筑,也是过去西藏地方统治者政教合一的统治中心。 在这里各种类型的佛像不计其数,有泥塑重彩、木雕、石刻,最多的还属金、银、铜、玉、 泥、犀牛角制成的佛像和佛教大师们的塑像。雕塑造型精美,高的可达十余米,小的仅几 厘米。佛教是三大宗教之一。7—8世纪佛教分别由印度和中国汉区传入中国西藏,到十世 纪中叶后形成为藏语系佛教。藏语系佛教又成为西藏佛教,是中国佛教的重要组成部分。 有的人称它"喇嘛教",或"西藏佛教"、"藏传佛教"。喇嘛是藏语的读音,意为"上师" 或"上人"。西藏佛教历史悠久,在发展中形成了自己的特点,并传播到相当广泛的地区。 布达拉宫是历代达喇嘛的冬宫,从五世达喇嘛开始,凡重大的宗教、政治仪式都在此举行。

布达拉宫是文物的宝库。三百多年来,布达拉宫收藏了 2500 多平方米的壁画、近千 座佛塔、上万户唐卡,还有金银器、铜铁器、珐琅器、漆器、竹雕器、骨角象牙器、珠宝 宝石、织绣、石刻、印章、货币、典籍、文献资料以及宗教法器等几十万件。珍贵的梵文 贝叶经文就有500余卷,还有释迦牟尼的舍利子,另外还有明清以来中央政府关于西藏的 各种封达的金册、玉册、金印和乾隆皇帝御赐的为挑选达赖转世灵通而设的金本巴瓶。

在 1994 年,布达拉宫被联合国教科文组织作为文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》; 在 2000年11月,西藏现存最辉煌的吐蕃时期木结构建筑大昭寺作为布达拉宫扩展项目被列 入《世界遗产名录》;在 2001年11月,西藏著名的古代园林、原7世至14世达赖喇嘛 的夏宫罗布林卡也作为扩展项目列入《世界遗产名录》。

我们将逐一参观主要景点,并将分不同的景点向大家作详细地讲解。大家注意!请 随我进入景区。

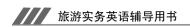


lacksquare Part Three Supplementary Reading

Yunggang Grottoes

Questions:

- 1. Where is Yunggang Grottoes located? Yunggang Grottoes is located in the north cliff of Wuzhoushan Mountain in west suburb of Datong.
- 2. How many caves and statues of Buddha are preserved to the present in the Grottoes? 53 caves and more than 1 100 big and small statues of Buddha
- 3. How high is the biggest statue of Buddha? How high is the smallest statue?



The biggest statue of Buddha is up to 17m high and the smallest statue is only 2millimeters high.

- 4. Why are Yunggang Grottoe well-known all over the world? Because Yunggang Grottoes are well-known all over the world for their grand momentum, rich contents and exquisite carving.
- 5. When was yunggang grotto listed in the world culture heritage by UNESCO? In the year of 2001.



Tibetan Culture

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Please talk about differences on Tibetan Catering Culture.
 - It is grouped into three major kinds, namely, staple food, dish and soup. Tibetan food pays close attention to a light taste. Peppery seasoning is normally not used, only salt and garlic. Zanba is the staple food of the Tibetan people and is simple. Mill the parched highland barley grains into flour, which is Zanba. When eating, put the Zanba into a bowl, add a little tea, butter and milk dregs to it, and mix and knead into a dumpling. Air-dried meat is a unique food in Tibet. When the temperature falls below zero at the end of the year, slit the quality beef and then hang it in a windy place to dry. It can be eaten in the following February or March, the crisp meat having a unique taste. There are innumerable ways of cooking the food at a Tibetan-style feast, along with means of holding a feast. In traditional society, the social status of guests was a determinant of the style of feast. There are both vegetable and meat-based feasts in Tibet.
- 2. Please talk about Tibetan folklore briefly.
 - Tibetans celebrate a lot of traditional religious festivals and activities. Tibet New Year is the greatest festival of Tibetans, when the folks will enjoy themselves. Tibetan opera is called "ache Ihamo" in Tibetan, a unique form in China's various theatrical arts. In the regions of Tibetan Buddhism, Piety Prostration is a way to show the piety of the pilgrims. There are three main forms, prostrating in the pilgrimage, in the temple or at a certain place.



I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- What are the main religions in China now?
 Confucianism, Taoism and Buddhism are the three major religions in China.
- Where's the Potala Palace located?Potala Palace stands aloft of Red Hill in Lhasa.



- 3. What parts does the Potala Palace mainly contain? The whole complex consists of the White and Red Palaces with their ancillary buildings.
- 4. What are the Four Grottoes in China? Mogao Grottoes (墩煌莫高窟), Yungang Grottoes (大同云冈石窟), Longmen Grottes (洛 阳龙门石窟) and Maiji Hill Grottoe (麦积山石窟).
- 5. How does the World Cultural Heritage Committee comment on the Yunggang Grottoes? Yunggang Grottoes represent the outstanding achievement of Buddhist cave art in China in the 5th and 6th centuries. The Five Cave created by Tan Yao (昙窑五窟), with their unity of layout and design, constitute a classical masterpieces of the first peak of Chinese Buddhist art.

II. Translate the following into English.

- 1. 中国公民的宗教信仰自由权受到宪法和法律的保护。 Chinese citizens' right of freedom of religious belief is protected by the Constitution and laws.
- 2. 中国各种宗教地位平等,和谐共处;信教与不信教的公民之间彼此尊重。 In China all religions have equal status and coexist in tranquility. Religious believers and non-believers respect each other, are united and have a harmonious relationship.
- 3. 张道陵被认为是道教的创始人,老子被尊为教主,其著作《道德经》被奉为道教经典。 Zhang Daoling is credited as its founder. Lao Zi is regarded as its master and his work Dao De Jing is its main doctrine.
- 4. 释迦牟尼是佛教的创始人。 Sakyamuni is the founder of Buddhism.
- 5. 穆罕默德是伊斯兰教的创始人。《古兰经》是伊斯兰教的经典。 Mhammed is the founder of Islam. Qur'an or Koran is the holy scripture of Islam.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

武当山古建筑群

以宫殿和寺庙为核心的这组世俗和宗教的建筑群,是中国元、明、清历代建筑和艺 术发展成就的例证。这一遗址位于武当山的山坡和谷地中,其大规模在兴建 14 至 17 世 纪的明代,其中最早的道教建筑可以追溯到公元7世纪。武当山建筑群曾大约在一千年 内代表中国艺术和建筑的最高标准。

-联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue

(G=Tour Guide, T=Tourist)

- G: Look! Before us is Yarlung Zangbo (雅鲁藏布大峡谷)。It's the world's largest canyon. (是 世界上最大的峡谷)
- T: How long is it?

- G: <u>It's 496.3 kilometers long</u> (有 496.3 公里长), 56.3 kilometers longer than the Colorado Grand Canyon.
- T: How about its depth? 有多深?
- G: It's 5 382 meters deep.
- T: It's really a wonder. (真是奇迹)

Unit Three Religious Buildings in China

Background References on religious building:

China's five major religions:

There are more than 100 million religious followers in China, over 85 000 places of worship, and 3 000 religious communities with 30 000 clergy to serve the spiritual needs of their followers.

- 1. Buddhism (佛教): Of the top five religious, Buddhism, the most influential, has a history of more than 2 000 years in China. Chinese Buddhism has at least 40 000 monks and nuns and more than 5 000 temples and monasteries.
- 2. Taoism/Daoism (道教): Taoism, native to China, has history of more than 1 700 years. At present, there are more than 1 600 Taoist temples in China, home to over 26 000 Taoist priests and nuns. In an effort to promote the ancient religion of Taoism, the Chinese Taoist Association has published dozens of Taoist classics and has compiled more than 30 books about Taoism and a series of books on Taoist culture. Taoists can serve for the protection of the environment and oppose the conflicts, originated in Arabic.
- 3. Islam/Islamism (伊斯兰教): Islam originated in Arabic countries in 610 and was brought to China in the mid-7th century by merchants from Arabia and Persia. Its founder is Mohammed. Its basic doctrine is the belief that Allah is sole God. Every event in a human being's life is decided by Allah.
- 4. Catholicism (天主教): Boomed in China with the Opium War (1840-1842), It has 4 million followers in China today. Christianity (基督教), in a narrow sense, refers to Protestant Church (新教); in a broader sense, Christianity is divided to three main different factions, the Roman catholic Church (天主教), Protestant Church (新教) Orthodox Church or the Eastern Orthodox Church (东正教).
- 5. Protestantism (新教): Flourished in China with the Opium War (1840-1842), and the number of Protestants in China has reached 10 million, over 20 times more than that of 1949. The Protestants attend regular religious services in 50 000 churches and meeting places.

Unit Four

Mausoleums 第四单元 陵墓

俗语

知己知彼, 百战不殆

Introduction

陵墓是古代中国人们对灵魂信仰的集中表现,凝聚了一个时期的政治思想、道德观念和审美情趣;反映了当时社会的经济状况、科技水平和营造工艺。在中国古代把帝王的坟墓建得高大如山是皇权的象征。中国历代王朝提倡以厚葬尽孝,皇帝去世后,都不惜耗费大量的人力、财力建造巨大的陵墓。帝王陵墓结构比较复杂,一般分为地上和地下两部分。地下主要安装棺材的墓室,墓室内一般有大量的陪葬品;地面部分是环绕陵体而形成的一组建筑群,创造一种庄严肃穆的氛围。中山陵是中国近代伟大的政治家、革命先行者孙中山的陵墓。主要建筑有牌坊、墓道、陵门、石阶、碑亭、祭堂和墓室等,体现了中国传统建筑的风格。

Discussion

- 1. Why was the tomb of an emperor or a king was heaped up like a hill?

 Because it was heaped up like a hill to symbolize the imperial powerfulness.
- 2. How did the author describe the structure of emperors' tombs? The structure of emperors' tombs are more complex, but includes two parts in general: the upper and the underground. The main section underground is the coffin chamber, usually filled with a large number of burial objects. The upper section was often a building complex to create the memorial solemnity.



$igoplus_{igoplus} \mathbb{P}$ art One $\,$ Situational Dialogue $\,$

游 西 安

(G=导游, T=游客)

导游:大家早上好!欢迎来到西安。我叫刘英,很荣幸担任你们的导游。首先,让我简单的介绍一下西安,西安是历史文化名城,古称长安,现在是陕西省的省会。西安位于渭河中心的平原,巍峨苍翠的秦岭以南。一共有十二个王朝在此建都,建都时间长达1120年。

游客: 刘小姐,早上好! 感谢你的介绍。西安举世闻名,我在孩提时代,就盼望到西安 一游。

导游:您说得完全正确,我不得不说,西安太值得一游了,特别是对中国历史、传统文化和建筑的人来说,则更值得一游。西安是中国最著名的古都之一;是中外文明的"丝绸之路"的起点。西安的兵马俑被誉为20世纪最伟大的考古发掘之一。

游客: 我们想在西安游两天, 你能给些建议吗?

导游:很高兴为您效劳。因为你以前没有参观过西安,我建议你第一天游东线,第二天游西线。

游客: 这两个路线具体是怎么回事?

导游:游东线游的话,你可游华清池、秦始皇陵墓、兵马俑和铜车马。

游客:好的,我很喜欢。

导游:如果你回西安城早的话,你可游览城南的大雁塔、陕西历史博物馆,或者游览城墙、西安碑林博物馆及钟楼。

游客: 太好了!

导游: 去西线的话, 乾陵和法门寺最值得一游, 但要花整整一天时间。



lacksquare lacksquare Art Two Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

兵马俑博物馆

女士们、先生们:

今天,我们将参观秦兵马俑博物馆位于西安市东 35 公里处,从我们住宿的酒店坐车到那里大约需要 50 分钟时间。秦兵马俑博物馆自 1979 年 10 月 1 日开馆至今,已有为数众多的国家党政首脑参观过这个博物馆,更有数以百万计的中外游客不远干里来参观这一人类奇迹。

你们知道谁发现这些兵马俑吗? 1974 年 3 月,当地村民抗旱打井时,发现了规模宏大的秦始皇陵兵马俑坑。这个规模宏大的奇迹经过考古工作者的发掘,终于揭开了埋藏于地下两千多年的秦俑宝藏。这个发现引起了中国考古工作者的高度关注,人们认为这



是世界奇迹,是 20 世界最伟大的发现之一。

我们已经来到了秦兵马俑博物馆,我将带你们去参观三个主要的兵马俑坑。这些与 真人、真马等高的数以千计的陶俑群,都深埋在地面以下五至七米,按照军事序列排列, 分布在三个坑内。三个坑大小不等,形状各异。兵马俑坑是世界上最大的地下军事博物 馆。

我们正站在一号坑的前面,在一号坑中已发掘出武士俑五百余件,战车六乘,驾 车马 24 匹,还有青铜剑、吴钩、矛、箭、弩机等实战用的青铜兵器和铁器。佣坑东 端有 210 个与人等高的陶武士佣。大家仔细看!他们的面部神态、服装样式、发型各 不相同,个个栩栩如生、形态逼真。这支队伍阵容整齐、装备完备、威风凛凛、气壮 山河。

现在让我们去参观二号坑。二号坑占地六、千平方米,被分隔成个自独立又互相联 系的四个部分,由车兵、骑兵和步兵构成曲尺形方阵。估计士兵佣一千多件,车马和鞍 马五百多批。它东面突出的部分为一个小方阵,每排有八辆战车,共八排;中部有19辆 战车和随车徒手的兵佣;北部有战车六乘、鞍马和骑兵 124 件组成的骑兵阵。请大家仔 细观察,并把二号坑与一号坑进行对比,发现有什么异同? 实际上,所有的兵马俑面朝 东方,在兵种、阵容、造型及姿态等方面,都比一号坑更为丰富多彩。

三号坑位于二号坑 25 米处。我们现在就去那里。请大家注意!这是三号坑。你们认 为三号坑是什么形状?排列呈凹字型,占地520米。从此坑发现了一辆战车和64件武士 佣。他们两两相对站立,手握仪卫兵器。大多数考古学家认为,根据武士的排列方式、 手中的兵器以及该坑与秦陵的位置判断,这是整个军队的指挥部。

女士们、先生们! 秦俑坑的发现是中国和世界考古史上的一次重大发现, 号称世界 第八大奇迹,它可以同埃及金字塔和古希腊雕塑媲美,是世界人类文化的宝贵财富。在 回旅馆的过程中,我们会经过秦始皇陵。想去的人,我可以带你们去参观,请作好准备。 如果你不想去,可以自由30分钟,四处走走或在车上休息。



Emperor Qin

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What period was he born at?
 - He was born at time of continuous wars between the seven powerful lords.
- 2. How did Ying Zheng become the king of Qin?
 - After Zichu assumed the throne as King Zhuangxiang, he entitled Ying Zheng as his successor prince. In 247 B.C. the king died, and 13-year-old prince took over as king of Qin.
- 3. How did he find the first centralized empire of many nationalities? After the 10 years bloodshed from 230 to 221 B.C., he defeated all the six lord states of Han,



Zhao, Yan, Wei, Chu, and Qi, thus ended the warring period of separating regimes of hundreds years and founded the first centralized empire of many nationalities.

4. How did he consolidate his rule?

To consolidate his rule, he instituted a series of new policies. At the top he appointed 3 lords and 9 ministers as his help directly responsible to himself, and the leading officials of central and local governments were also nominated or removed by the emperor himself.

5. How did he enjoy showing off his greatness?
To show off his greatness, he carved praises of his achievements on steles wherever on his inspection tours around the country.



The Art of Sculpture in Qin Dynasty

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. How do you construct warriors' character of Terra-cotta warriors of Emperor Qin by sculpture?
 - By detail of the brows, eyes, nose wings, and beard, the craftsmen emphasized the warriors' wit, calm, fortitude and courage.
- Please describe main features of the art of sculpture in Qin Dynasty.
 The art of sculptures in Qin Dynasty tends to be reality-oriented, unsophisticated and precise in the workmanship, whose creation was meticulous.

秦代的雕塑艺术

中国古代雕塑艺术在不同的历史时期有不同的特点。秦始皇陵兵马俑是秦代雕塑艺术的杰出代表。从宏观的角度观察他们,造型精美的陶塑兵马俑布成面向东方气势磅礴的军阵场面,充分显示了秦军的威武强大和高超的战略战术水平,再现了秦始皇当年金戈铁马,一统华夏的壮丽图景,具有强大的艺术感染力。从微观的角度观察,创作者通过眉、眼、鼻翼、胡须等细部形象的刻画,着重塑造将士们的机智沉着、坚毅勇猛的性格,七千件陶佣栩栩如生形态各异,让人找不到两个完全相同的。他们最重的有三百多公斤,最轻的也有一百多公斤,身高 1.7 米到 1.9 米不等,从长相和发髻胡须梳理方式上可以表别他们的家乡在何处。佣坑中的马是典型的河西走廊马,骠肥体壮,体形劲健,鬃毛分飞,充满了力量和美感。兵马佣手执的兵器用青铜制作,表面涂有一层络盐氧化物以防生绣,这种技术比西方人要早出两千多年。总之,秦代艺术家崇尚写实、质朴无华、一丝不苟;手艺在世界上处于领先水平。在这段时期,有许多现实主义雕塑艺术杰作。





$\Longrightarrow \mathbb{P}$ art Five $\;$ Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- Can you introduce three pits of Terra-cotta Army Museum briefly?
 Pit I is that of the main force of infantry and chariots, Pit II the compound of infantry, cavalry, and chariots, and Pit III the headquarters of them all.
- 2. Can you tell me some of China's famous imperial mausoleum? The Qin Shihuang Mausoleum in Lintong, Shaanxi, is the largest mausoleum of Qin and Han Dynasties. Qianling, is the mausoleum where Emperor Gaozong was buried together with Wuzetian Zhaoling mausoleum of emperor Taizong and the Imperial Tombs of the Ming and Qing dynasties are all China's famous imperial mausoleum.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. 秦始皇在位期间统一了文字、货币和度量衡,建立了郡县制度,并组织在中国北部修建了世界文明的长城。During his reign, Qin Shi Huang standardized the script, currencies, and weights and measures, established the system of prefectures and counties, and constructed the world-renowned the Great Wall in the North of China.
- 2. 唐代陵墓的一个显著特点就是整个陵墓区都是模仿国都建造的。渗透了严格的礼仪制度逻辑,旨在突出对皇权的尊敬。There was a distinguishing feature in the Tang Dynasty mausoleum, in that the entire mausoleum district was modeled on the capital city. The design was permeated with strict ritual system logic, giving prominence to the dignity of imperial authority.
- 3. 明孝陵的埋葬制度是承上启下的纽带,它继承了汉、唐、宋时期陵寝制度的精华,并且进行了创新,开创了明清陵寝制度的先河。Xiaoling Tomb's burial system served as a link between its past and future in that it inherited the cream of the imperial burial systems of the Han, Tang, and Song Dynasties, added unique innovations to them, and created the imperial burial system used by both the Ming and Qing Emperors.
- 4. 永陵占地面积 1.2 万平方米,四周山水环绕,创造出一幅郁郁葱葱的景象。Yongling Mausoleum covers an area of about twelve thousand square meters surrounded by mountains and rivers, creating an impression of luxuriant surroundings.
- 5. 陵寝必须有坟丘式的"陵"和绕以恒墙的"陵园",还要有与之相配合的"寝"、"庙"等建筑。A real mausoleum had to have a grave mound and a cemetery within walls, temples and other buildings to be complete.

III. Translate the following passages into Chinese.

1. 大金字塔是埃及法老的陵墓,位于埃及开罗西南 10 公里处的吉萨。在古埃及法老一登基,就要着手为自己建造陵墓,以求死后超度为神。因墓形状如汉字中的"金"字,



故译成"金字塔"。

2. 泰姬陵是印度著名的古陵墓,为伊斯兰教中的代表作。泰姬陵是沙贾汉皇帝为其死区 的爱妻泰姬•玛哈尔修建的。始建于公元 1631 年, 历时 22 年, 陵园占地 17 万平方 米。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

- G: Now we come to Big Wild Goose Pagoda. (大雁塔).
- T: When was it built?
- G: <u>It was built in the Tang Dynasty</u>, 625 A.D. (这个塔建于唐朝)
- T: Why?
- G: Xuan Zang went to India and brought the sutras (玄奘去印度带回佛经), so he built the pagoda to house them.
- T: But why is it called Big Wild Goose Pagoda?
- G: There are two legends. One is that it was called in memory of the temple in India where Xuan Zang lived, on a goose-shaped hill. (为了纪念玄奘住过的寺院)
- T: Yeah.
- G: The other is that it could have acquired its name because some monks were starving and Buddha, in the form of a wild goose, dropped down among them (坠落在他们中间). The monks, being vegetarians, refused to eat it. (是素食者).
- T: How interesting!

Unit Five

Military Defenses 第五单元 军事防御

俗 语 一夫当关,万夫莫开

Introduction

在历史上,防御者比攻击者更有优势。一般来说,战争主要集中对重要城市的围攻,允许防御者巩固自己的地盘。他们有能力为保护自己为战争做准备以防敌人攻击。例如:修筑战壕、修建防御工事或者埋放置障碍物如埋地雷和使用坦克等。然而,大规模的战役与小规模的战役相比,攻击者更有优势,因为他们可以灵活地选择时间和地点。攻击者可以集中全部军力针对小片防御领域;而强迫防御者扩大防御范围。在漫长的古代和中世纪,世界上的许多地区都曾修筑过大型的军事工程。但就其持续修筑和使用年代之长久、形制规模之宏伟、范围之辽阔、影响之深远来说,中国的长城理所当然名列榜首。在现代社会,防御者的好处逐渐减少,主要是因为现代军队的灵活性日益增强、信息技术飞速发展、军队和设施的自我防护能力增强。

Discussion:

- 1. Why was it generally true that defenders had an advantage over attackers historically?

 Because Battles commonly focused on sieges of important cities, allowing defenders to strengthen their position. They had the ability to make preparations for the battle to protect themselves from the enemy while making the enemy vulnerable.
- 2. Why may the attacker often have the advantage in encounters larger than the small scale? Because they can choose the time and place of battle. An attacker may concentrate their entire force on a small part of the defended area, while the defender is forced to spread their forces over the possible area of attack.



ightharpoons hoart One $\;$ Situational Dialogue

游长城

导游:女士们、先生们!我们今天将去参观长城。大家准备好了没有?

游客: 久仰长城大名, 还真有点激动!

导游: 你们还记得关于长城的一个俗语吗?

游客:记得。不到长城非好汉!

导游: 非常对。我们就快到八达岭了, 你们很快就能见到长城啦!

游客: 为什么你带我们去八达岭看长城?

导游:因为长城的八达岭部分是"天下九塞"之一。八达岭居高临下,地势险峻,不可靠近,历代都重兵把守,具有重要战略地位。

游客:"八达岭"是怎么得名的呢?

导游:"八达岭"的中文意义就是"四通八达"。现在我们已经到了八达岭。

游客: 真是百闻不如一见!

导游:长城沿着八达岭山脊向前延伸。现在我们正站在城墙脚下。

游客:哦,真是壮观!就像一条巨龙蜿蜒盘踞在山顶上。我想知道这城墙究竟有多高, 长城有多长。

导游: 城墙平均高度大约 7.5 米。长城全长 6 350 公里或者说 12 700 里。这就是我们称其 为万里长城的原因。让我们上城楼吧?

游客:哦,我们来到城楼上了。多么壮观的景色啊!

导游:这些是烽火台。古代时,当任何守卫发现有敌军靠近时,白天他们就点浓烟,晚上就点篝火作为警报。邻近的守卫看到信号也做同样的事。以这样的方式信号就会被一直传到京城。

游客: 多高明啊!



hickspace extstyle ex

长城风光

女士们、先生们:

欢迎你们来到北京!我叫王玲。我来自北京长城国际旅行社。如果你对长城感兴趣, 我愿意为你们介绍一下长城风光。

长城横跨七个省,两个自治区和一个直辖市。长城开始修筑于公元七-八世纪,前后延续修筑了两千多年,总计长达六万多公里,是月球上唯一能够看得见的人类杰作。古代帝王修筑长城主要是作为防御工事。到目前古老的长城大部分已毁坏或消失,但是靠近北京的几个部分已经成为受世界人们欢迎的旅游胜地,例如八达岭、幕田峪、古北口



长城等。下面让我来简单介绍一下他们的情况。

八达岭长城

八达岭长城是保存最完整的长城。它是万里长城之精华,明长城中最杰出的代表。 八达岭长城在居庸关北,距北京80公里,地处交通要道,四通八达,故名八达岭。八达 岭长城号称"天下九塞"之一,是指挥战争的要地。八达岭长城居高临下,地势险峻, 历代都派重兵把守,至今八达岭山崖下,还留有"天险"二字的题记。岭口是个小小的 关城,东西两面各有一座关门。东面门额上刻的四个大字是"居庸外镇":西面是"北方 锁匙",明代弘治十八年(1505年)修建。长城平均7.8米高,最高处8.4米。长城够5 匹马并排奔驰,十个人并肩前进。外墙称它跺口墙。为了防御的目的在跺口墙的上部设 有望口。在墙的内侧设宇墙,高约一米,以防止巡逻士兵跌落。城墙上窄下宽,使城墙 坚固。如果你登高远望,长城似一条巨龙翻山越岭奔向远方,一个堡垒连着一个堡垒, 一段城墙连着一段城墙, 气势雄伟壮观。

慕田峪长城

慕田峪是保护都城和帝陵的北部城墙。 慕田峪长城在北京怀柔县西北 20 公里处的山 峦岭脊之上。这一带长城以军都山为屏障,是明代京师北门的重要防线,与居庸关、镇 边城等关口构成一个完整的防卫体系。慕田峪长城墙高五至七米,顶部马道 3 四米;墙 身两侧用条石垒砌,中间以乱石灰土堆填。顶部马道两侧垛墙有射孔。慕田峪一带因山 势平缓,故敌台林立。敌台之间最近距离不足 50 米。空心敌台高、宽一般均在 12 米左 右。分上下两层。下层为室,上层建望台。著名的"莲花泉"、"珍珠泉",水源充足:松 柏常青,绿化带占90%,是万里长城最为秀丽的精华所在。

古北口长城

古北口长城是通往北京城的重要关口;它沿着山脉延伸此起彼伏。古北口长城位 于北京密云县古北口镇内。地势至为险要,是北京通往塞外高原的要道。其主体城墙 将盘龙、卧虎二山连成一线,十分奇险。这里曾是春秋战国时期燕国长城,有过多次 著名的战役。最早开始建设是北齐时期(550-557)555年。在古北口长城南山坡上建 有一座宋代名将杨业的庙。在明朝(1368-1644)期间,对古北口长城进行了扩展和加 固。有了更多的烽火台和关口。这段城墙是战国时期燕国的城墙;曾经在这里发生了 许多战争,明洪武十一年(1379)大将徐达重修古北口长城,名为营城,现仅存遗址。 最后一次修建是1567年。此后再没有进行重建和修复。古北口长城保持了原始风貌。 古北口长城也有一些象寺庙和临时宫殿一样的景观。这段长城适合于徒步旅行和摄

长城是中国人民勤劳、智慧的结晶,是古代中国文化的象征。长城是世界的奇迹, 具有极高的旅游观光价值和历史文化意义。今天,国内外游人以"不到长城非好汉。"这 一诗句来表达一定要亲自登上长城一览中华悠久文明和壮丽河山的心情。

欢迎你们参观长城!谢谢你们的关注。如果你们需要我们的帮助,请毫不犹豫地和 我们联系,我们会尽力提供方便。最后,祝你们在北京玩得开心!



lacktriangle lacktriangle Part Three Supplementary Readings

A Brief Introduction on Eight Wonders in the World

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Why did people build the Great Wall in China?

 The Great Wall was built to prevent invasions of nomadic people from the north.
- 2. What is the purpose which the Terra-cotta Army was built?

The Terra-cotta Army was built as a way of creating an illusion of strength and manpower. It was believed that as enemies approached, they would be overwhelmed with the powerful army supporting Emperor Qin and turn away.

- 3. Why were the pyramids built?
 - The pyramids were built which served as royal tombs.
- 4. What do you think of the structure on Statue of Zeus at Olympia?

 It was a towering structure of ivory and gold, 40 feet high, majestic and beautiful.
- 5. For whom was the Hanging Garden built? Babylonian king constructed the gardens to please his homesick wife, Amytis of Media, who longed for the trees and fragrant plants of her homeland.



- 1. The Pyramids of Egypt
- 2. Gina
- 3. Pharaoh khufu
- 4. Zeus
- 5. the Statue of Zeus at Olympia
- 6. the Pharos (Lighthouse) of Alexandria
- 7. Hanging Gardens of Babylon
- 8. Nebuchadnezzar
- 9. the Temple of Artemis (Diana) at Ephesus
- 10. the Mausoleum at Halicarnassus

埃及金字塔

吉萨

法老胡夫的金字塔

宙斯

希腊奥林匹亚的宙斯神像

亚历山大港的灯塔

古代巴比伦的空中花园

尼布甲尼撒二世,巴比伦国王 605-526B.C.

以弗所城的阿耳特弥斯或狄安娜神殿

土耳其哈利卡纳苏的摩索拉斯陵墓



Part Five Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

How many provinces does the Great Wall wind through?
 Seven provinces.



- 2. Why are quite a few sections of the wall near Beijing world favored tourists' resorts? Because of thoughtful restoration and maintenance, quite a few sections of the wall near Beijing are world favored tourists' resorts.
- 3. Which section is the best-preserved one of the Great Wall? Badaling.
- 4. What does Badaling mean?

The name means leading to all directions in Chinese because of its important location as a gateway.

5. What is Gubeikou section suitable for doing? The section is suitable for hiking and photography.

II. Translate the following into English.

- 1. 世界上最长的防御城墙是万里长城。 The longest defensive wall in the World is the Great Wall.
- 2. 长城好似一条盘旋的长龙,蜿蜒与沙漠、草原和高山之间。

The Great Wall winds across lands including deserts, grasslands and even mountains just like a long, serpentine dragon.

- 3. 故宫四面围有高墙,城外有护城河,里面则有许多宫殿和庭院所构成。 Palace Museum is protected by high walls and a moat on all four sides and consists of dozens of halls and courtyards.
- 4. 敌进我退,敌驻我忧。

The enemy advance, we with draw. The enemy camps, we harass.

5. 敌疲我打,敌退我追。

When the enemy seeks to avoid battle, we attack. When the enemy retreats, we pursue.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

- 1. The Nanjing Yangtze River Bridge was constructed in 1960, and was completed in 1968. It was constructed by the Chinese people without outside engineering assistance. The bridge is double-decked, the upper part being a road bridge with 4 500 meters in length, and the lower part being a railway bridge with 6 000 meters in length. It is one of the longest bridges in China. 南京长江大桥始建于 1960 年, 完工于 1968 年。南京长江大桥是由中 国人自己设计和建造的。共有两层,上层是 4500 米长的公路桥,下层是 6700 米长 的铁路桥。它是中国最长的桥之一。
- 2. The Grand Canal, more than 1 700 kilometers in length, is the world's longest man-made waterway. It was built to transport grain and other necessities from Changjiang and Huaihe River valleys to send the ruling center of the feudal dynasties continuously. 大运河全长 1700 公里,是世界上最长的人工运河。它的修建使得长江和淮河流域的粮食及其他 必须品能够源源不断地运送到中国封建王朝的统治中心。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

- T: Could you make a brief introduction about the World Heritages in China?
- G: Yes, with along and rich history, China has many world heritages, such as Emperor Qin's Terra-cotta Army, the Great Wall, the Forbidden City, the Summer Palace, Temples of Heaven, "Peking Man" Site at Zhouloudian, Ancient City of Pingyao, Potala Palace, and so on. (秦陵兵马俑、长城、紫禁城、颐和园、天坛、周口店"北京人"遗址、平遥古城、不达拉宫等等)
- T: Good. But could you say more about each of them?
- G: OK. Let me tell you something about the great Wall. The Great Wall is 6 350 kilometers in length, running east to west and crossing five provinces (万里长城全长 6 350 公里,从东到西横跨五省). The history spans more than 2 000 years, and it is now considered to be of the greatest wonders on earth.
- T: Do you know something about the "Peking Man" Site at Zhoukoudian?
- G: It is a cultural site, located about 50 km southwest of Beijing and in the contiguous area between Taihang Mountains and North China Plain.So far, "Peking Man" Site at Zhoukoudian is the most systematic and the most plentiful anthropology site with richest contents, and enjoys weighty position in the studies of palae-anthropology and geology of the Quaternary Period. ("北京人"遗址是材料最丰富、最系统的一个古人类遗址,在古人类学和第四纪地质学研究中占有重要位置)
- G: As we know, Confucius is a household name in China. Speaking of him, we should know a place of sacrificing to him.
- T: Where is it located?
- G: It is located in Qufu, Shandong Province. It is a worship place of sacrificing to Confucius, the cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion, and the residence of oldest offspring of his lineal descents. (它是孔庙、孔林、孔府,是历代祭祀孔子的地方,孔子及后代家族墓地和孔子嫡长孙的府邸)
- T: I have never heard Ancient City of Pingyao. Can you introduce it briefly?
- G: Yes, it is not as famous as others. But it is located in Pingyao, Shanxi Province. <u>It was constructed in 1370</u>, the 3rd year of the Hongwu reign in the Ming Dynasty. It is the county city wall on the largest scale and with the longest history extant in Shanxi Province. (建于明洪武三年即 1370 年,是山西现存历史较早、规模最大的县城城墙)
- T: Thank you for the information about them.

Unit Six

Classical Gardens 第六单元 古典园林

俗语

上有天堂, 下有苏杭。

Introduction

古典园林

中国园林在漫长的发展过程中,形成了皇家园林和私家园林两大园林体系。皇家园林具有宏大、严整、堂皇和艳丽的特色;私家园林具有小巧、自由、精致、淡雅的特色。中国北方园林大多是皇家园林,如北京的北海公园、颐和园及承德的避暑山庄。中国南方园林大都属于高级官员和商人的园林,他们一般退休之后用于居住和休闲。大多数皇家园林包括三个部分:办公区、住宅区和娱乐区。在大型皇家园林区,主要建筑物集中在中部通过以南北方向为主轴的虚拟线串联起来。其他建筑物分布在山水之间,通过副轴线连接起来,强调设计对称并且能为主要建筑群增添美感。大部分私家园林分布在南方,特别是长江以南的城市。私家园林主要靠边建,或者建在住宅区的背面。私家园林有一大片空间从艺术的角度安放假山、池子、亭阁以及树木花草等;建筑四面敞开,常常靠着水面可以欣赏全景。

Discussion

- What differences are there between imperial gardens and private gardens?
 Imperial gardens are grand, formal, majestic, and luxurious, while private gardens are modest, casual, exquisite and plain.
- What do most imperial gardens include?
 Most imperial gardens include three sections: the administrative section, residential section and recreational section.



$\gg \mathbb{P}$ art I $\;$ Situational Dialogue

游江苏

(G=导游: T=游客)

导游: 先生们! 女士们! 欢迎来到江苏。在江苏有许多著名的景点。

游客: 你能为我们介绍一些江苏的主要景点吗?

导游: 当然,在南京最著名的景点有中山陵和灵谷寺,扬州则是在大运河畔的一座美丽的小城。在周庄,历史与文化同自然完美地结合在一起。

游客: 为什么江苏又称为另一个威尼斯?

导游: 苏州园林集自然美、建筑美和绘画美于一体。马可·波罗13世纪下半叶曾游历过苏州,并盛赞其为另一个威尼斯。

游客: 我们对苏州园林感兴趣。私家园林和皇家园林有什么不同?

导游: 私家园林小而幽静,有的则很奇特,而皇家园林很宏大,有时就用真山真河及真湖作为一个景点。

游客: 请介绍一下苏州著名的园林好吗?

导游:好的。狮子林是苏州一个有名的园林。它建于元代,是一个私家园林。

游客: 为什么取这样一个名字?

导游: 狮子林就是狮子组成的森林。在这个园林里有一些太湖石,象狮子一样。拙政园 是中国园林经典之作。我们现在已经来到拙政园了。

游客: 这里真安静。这个园子似乎比我们参观过的园子要大。

导游: 这是苏州最大的古代园林,占地 4 公顷。水是这个园子这主要的特征,水域面积占整个园林的五分之三。

游客: 我们非常欣赏拙政园清澈的水面。

导游: 拙政园包括三个区域, 东区、西区和中区。风景绝佳处在中区; 我们现在在西区, 西区主要是水池。

游客:我们被苏州园林独创性建筑风格和奇异的布局所吸引。在苏州还有什么特产?

导游: 苏州以生产扇子而闻名; 苏绣以其精致的工艺、漂亮的设计和雅致的色彩而举世文明。



Part II A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

苏州古典园林

女士们、先生们:

欢迎你们来到美丽的苏州! 苏州又称"姑苏"位于太湖之滨,已经具有 2500 多年的历史。人们常说:"天上天堂,地下苏杭"。苏州具有丰富的自然资源、历史遗产和农业



产品。苏州被称为园林之家,苏州拥有最多最好的私家园林。

今天我们将去参观苏州的一些古典园林。在到达目的地之前,我向大家先介绍一下 苏州的历史。苏州建于公元前514年。它曾经是吴国的首都。苏州被认为是该地区经济、 政治和文化中心。由于水陆运输方便,在古时候,成了文人墨客和商人喜欢聚集的地方。 苏州私家园林占地面积并不大,却包含有池、溪、假山、植物、亭阁等装饰。这些装饰 通过对比、衬托、借景和小中见大、以少胜多等多种造园技巧和手法把装饰材料组合起 来营造理想生存环境。当你沉浸其中,你会与自然融合产生一种强烈的和谐感。拙政园、 留园、网师园和环秀山庄是苏州古典园林的典型代表,他们产生于苏州私家园林发展的 鼎盛时期,以其意境深远,构筑精致、艺术高雅、文化内涵丰富而成为江南四家园林的 典范。1997年12月,联合国教科文组织将它们列入《世界遗产名录》并做出评价认为"苏 州四个古典园林是中国风景园林设计的杰作,其艺术、自然与哲理的完美结合,创造出 了惊人的美和宁静的和谐"。2001年又将苍浪亭、艺圃、耦园、狮子林、退思园列入世界 遗产名录。

我们现在正在前往拙政园,30分钟后我们将到达那里。请让我来简单介绍一下。拙 政园位于娄门内东北街,占地约五公顷,是苏州园林中最大、最著名的园林,也是江南 园林的代表。拙政园始建于明代正德四年(1509)。拙政园成为江南第一名园的重要原因 是在建园时得到了吴门画派著名大师、文学家文征明的精心规划和设计。拙政园的布局 以水为中心,水面约占全园面积的 1/3,主要建筑大都临水而筑。全园分中、西、东三部 分。中间部分风景如画,园中建筑依水而建,疏朗雅致。荷塘两岸垂柳依依,营造了幽 雅宁静的氛围。主厅远香堂又称"四面厅"兀立于池南林木之中。远香堂四面敞开,周 围是亭阁、假山和蜿蜒的小桥。从这遥望远处,苏州名塔"北寺塔"隐现于林梢之上。 西部与中部之间用墙间隔,墙上开了若干漏窗。西部的建筑环池而建,布局紧凑。主厅 面山临水,呈现鸳鸯格局,南厅称为"十八曼陀罗花馆",北厅称为"三十六鸳鸯馆"。 东部是在原田原居遗址上拓建而成。

现在我们正站在拙政园的门口,我们将重点参观远香堂、见山楼、香洲、十八曼陀 罗花馆、三十六鸳鸯馆、留听阁和倒影楼。美丽的景点正在等待我们,让我们快进去吧!



lacksquare lacksquare art III Supplementary Readings

Summer Palace

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Where is the Summer Palace located? It is located at the northwest suburb of Beijing, about 15km from the capital proper.
- 2. How large an area does the palace cover? It covers an area of about 293 hectares.
- 3. How is Summer Palace highly valued? The palace is highly valued not only in the sense of its landscape art but also its role in

science and history, which ranks it among the most world famous resorts of tourists.

- 4. When is the Summer Palace listed into the World Cultural Heritage List?

 In December of 1998, the Summer Palace is listed into the World Cultural Heritage List.
- 5. Can you describe the general design of the Summer Palace?
 Its general design follows the tradition of Chinese landscape construction, and the buildings are arranged in harmony with the natural landform.

◎ 译文

颐 和 园

颐和园地处北京西北郊外,距京城约 15 公里。始建于 1750 年。颐和园占地 293 公顷,主要由万寿山和昆明湖组成,其中昆明湖面积约占全面积的 3/4。园内建筑以佛香阁为中心,拥有亭、台、楼、阁、廊、榭三千多间。园林总体布局继承了中国传统造园艺术特色,依循自然山水,因地制宜地分布。颐和园还全面吸收了江南园林的诗情画意,因而,颐和园除皇家园林所特有的富丽恢弘气势外,也极富婉约变化,幽雅自然,充分体现了人工美和自然美的巧妙结合。颐和园杰出的园林艺术价值和重要的科学艺术价值,使它成为中外最著名的游览胜地之一。1998 年被联合国教科文组织审定列入《世界遗产名录》。



Chinese Gardens Arts

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What relationships are there between the art of Chinese classical gardens and China' traditional culture?
 - The art of Chinese classical gardens is a part of China's traditional culture.
- 2. How long is the art of Chinese classical gardens?
 - It has a history of more than 3 000 years.
- 3. How does the art of Chinese gardening reconstruct nature?

 The art of Chinese gardening reconstructs nature by recreating landscape.
- 4. How does the art of Chinese gardening reflect natural scenes?
 In classical Chinese gardens, the flowers, grass, tress, rocks and ponds reflect natural scenes.
 Halls, verandas, pavilions and bridges blend well with the natural scenery of mountains and rivers.
- 5. Why is the birth of garden architecture in China a natural materialization?

 It is a natural materialization of this philosophy, literature, fine arts, architecture, and craftsmanship, composing, mountain, water, buildings, and plants as the main elements full of



traditional Chinese culture. It aims at the recreation of more natural beauty in a limited space.

中国园林艺术

中国园林艺术是中国传统文化的一部分。它有三千多年的历史。中国园林在小规模 上像自然景观。中国的园林艺术是重构自然的一种方式;通过再造景观获得效果。在中 国古典园林中、花草、树木、岩石和池塘都是对自然景观的体现。大厅、阳台、亭阁、 桥梁与山水自然景观融为一体。中国古典园林受到山水田园诗歌的影响,园艺师们在绘 画方面选择了最令人印象深刻的自然风景:画家通过捕捉自然山水风光的方式重新构建 它的花园。传统中国园林的创作依靠山脉、河流、建筑、植物、动物甚至天气。在设计 的这些花园中通常地面区域就象一个小山区。这种花园布局模仿了真实的地形。在古典 园林中的这些小山为游客提供了自然环境。在现在保存完好的古典园林中,人们发现自 然和艺术和谐地融洽在一起。装饰结构与悬崖、树木、花草和山脉创造了一种艺术风景。 园林最重要的成分都是水,水以多种形式存在例如池塘、湖泊、溪流、河水和瀑布等。 特别是在私人园林中树木花草在有限空间的整体布局中通过精心挑选,选择的植物、花 草能够体现四季的美。园林中最重要的结构是走道、亭阁和小桥。木架的建构也担负着 重要的作用。走道穿过建筑群,把建筑群分隔成一个个小区域,又把不同类型的建筑连 成一个整体。亭阁建在特别显眼的地方,例如建在山顶或者建在湖中的小岛上。四面敞 开,他们提供了好的视野,并且参观者可以在那里进行短暂的休息。各种类型的桥在地 面都可以找到; 在平整的石板桥上, 人们能够舒适地观察水中的鱼。高高的石拱桥和摇 摆桥可以装饰湖中的岛屿。园林艺术是物质文明和精神文明的体现,形象地再现了民族 的气质。中国园林艺术的诞生是哲学、文学、美术、建筑学和工艺学的自然物化,把山、 水、建筑、植物作为体现传统中国文化的主要因素。它的目的是在有限的空间内对更多 的自然美景进行重构,成为古代中华文明的精髓。



$hicksim \mathbb{P}$ art Five $\;$ Consolidation

V. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. What are the four most famous gardens in China? The Summer Palace (颐和园), the Imperial Mountain Summer Resort (避暑山庄), the Humble Administrator's Garden (拙政园), and the Lingering Garden (留园).
- 2. What are the four great essential factors of the traditional Chinese gardens? Mountains (hills), water, architectures and flowers and trees are considered the four great key elements of the traditional Chinese gardens (中国传统园林四大要素).
- 3. Where is the Humble Administrator's Garden located? It is located at Northeast Street inside Lou Gate of Suzhou.
- 4. What is the largest, the most famous and representative of all classical gardens in Suzhou? The Humble Administrator's Garden.
- 5. When was the Humble Administrator's Garden first constructed?



The garden was first constructed in 1509.

VI. Translate the following into English.

- 1. 中国古典园林的分类至少有四类方法。
 - There are at least four different ways to classify Chinese gardens.
- 2. 廊作为建筑间的联系,还可以划分空间。
 - Corridors served as a link between the buildings and as a division of space.
- 3. 园林是诗人和艺术家进行思考和产生灵感的地方。
 - The garden was a retreat for contemplation and an inspiration for poets and artists.
- 4. 园林是封闭的和私人化的空间, 所以经常光顾园林的是女性家庭成员。
 - The garden was frequented by the ladies of the household since it was enclosed and private.
- 5. 避暑山庄可分为宫殿区和公园区。宫殿区是皇帝处理公务、举行庆祝活动和休息的地 方:公园区则可分为湖州区、平原区和山区。

The Summer Resort can be divided into palace area and park area. Palace area is the place where the emperor took care of the governmental affairs, held celebration and had rest. Park area can again be divided into Huzhou zone, plain zone and mountains zone.

VII. Translate the following into Chinese.

- 1. 中国的亭式建筑可以用来装点园林。有的坐落于山顶,有的矗立于湖心,与周围景色。 **浑然一体。亭式建筑也具有实用价值。在古代有的亭子可用于行路人途中休息,有遮** 盖水井的井亭, 保护石碑的碑亭以及钟鼓厅和雨亭等。
- 2. 中国古典园林艺术,追求将大自然的风景微缩于庭院,这一艺术在历史名城苏州的 九处园林中得到了最好的阐明。它们被公认为最富有诗意的艺术杰作。这些修葺于 11至19世纪的园林,以其精致的设计,深刻反映了中国玄学中关于自然美的重要 性。

VIII. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourists)

- T: Can you tell me something about the Chinese gardens?
- G: Yes, of course. Chinese gardens have a long history. It began during the Shang and Zhou Dynasties and reached its height during the Ming Dynasty.
 - They can be classified into imperial gardens and private gardens (它们可以分为皇家园林 和私家园林).
- T: Oh, I see.
- G: Chinese gardens are very particular about the fusion of heaven and humans (中国园林特别 讲究天人合一). The layout was based on the principles of Feng Shui and the arrangement of the elements was more important than the elements themselves, such as the garden plants. The choice of plants is also well-done, and has their own implication.



- T: What is their own implication?
- G: Pine trees represent wisdom, bamboo shows strength and upright morality, peonies symbolize wealth and power and the lotus indicates purity, etc. (松树代表智慧, 竹子代表正直品德, 牡丹代表财富和权利, 莲花代表纯洁等等).
- T: I don't know that Chinese gardens have so many stresses.
- G: In 1997, Zhouzheng Garden, Liu Yuan, Wangshi Yuan and Huanxiu Shanzhuang Garden which represent the classical gardens of Suzhou, were listed in the World Cultural Heritage. And in 2000, the Canlang Ting, Shizi Garden, Ou Garden, Yipu Garden and Tuisi Garden are listed in the World Cultural Heritage as the extension project of Suzhou Classical Gardens. (2000年仓浪亭、狮子林、藕园、艺圃和退思园作为苏州古典园林的扩展项目 也被列为世界文化遗产)
- T: It's really fasinating and I am eager to go there.
- G: Welcome to Suzhou, and I will take you to experience the unique Chinese garden culture. (我将带你去体验独特的中国园林文化)

Unit Seven

Ancient Cities 第七单元 古城

俗语

墙内开花墙外香

Introduction

中国古代城市数量之多在世界上独一无二。中国古代城市的规划和建设自成体系。除了城市本身的规划是一份珍贵的历史文化遗产外,城市还保存了大量的古建筑和文物古迹。体现了特定时期的社会经济基础和丰富多彩的民族文化。这些古城市是历代王朝的各级政治、经济、军事、交通和文化中心。城市的发展是人类文明的象征,是社会经济发展的必然结果。城市的发展同时也是文明积累、整合和传承的过程。

Discussion

- 1. Why do ancient cities have a system of its own in their design and construction?

 The planning of towns is a precious heritage itself. Let alone the numerous architectural and cultural sites well preserved in them.
- What are author's opinions on the development of towns or cities?
 Towns or cities symbolize human civilization, a necessary result of social and economic development. Meanwhile, their development is also the cultural accumulation, integration and continuation.



云南观光

(G=导游; T=游客)

导游:(针对所有游客)先生们、女士们,欢迎大家来到云南。首先,让我自我介绍一下,

我叫刘英,是你们在云南的全程陪同。在以下的六天中,我将与大家在一起,希望你们过得愉快!

游客: 你可以简单的介绍一下云南吗?

导游:云南是一个多民族的边疆省份;它简称滇或云,是祖国西南边疆的重要门户。云南既有雄伟壮丽的高原景观,又有妩媚迷人的边寒风光。

游客: 您可以介绍一下云南的主要景点吗?

导游:云南的路南石林享誉世界,每年要接待游客百万余人。大理是举世闻名的旅游胜地,被称为"东方瑞士"、"中国的日内瓦"和"云贵高原上的一颗明珠"。西双版纳素有"动物王国"和"植物王国"的美称。

游客: 你能告诉我们在这儿能看到些什么动物和植物吗?

导游: 当然可以。在西双版纳热带雨林和季雨丛林里生长着陆栖脊椎动物 359 种,两栖爬行动物 118 种,鸟类 439 种,蛇类 60 多种。

游客:我的一个朋友告诉我说石林非常美丽,并建议我去那儿玩。你能告诉我石林在什么地方吗?

导游:石林离云南省省会约86公里。

游客: 石林占地面积多少平方公里。

导游: 占地面积 350 平方公里。大自然以它神奇的力量造就了中国的"天下第一奇观"。

游客: 如果站在石林顶上, 出现在我眼前的肯定是一片壮观的景色。

导游:云南石林享誉世界,每年要接待国内外游客百万余人。确实值得一游。



$\Longrightarrow \mathbb{P}$ art Two $\:$ A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

丽江古城

先生们!女士们!请大家醒来!看前面的山峰。现在我们可以看到美丽的丽江古城了,它位于玉龙雪山、金沙江的怀抱之中,坐落于丽江坝子中央,海拔 2 410 米,面积 3.8 平方公里,人口约 2.5 万。这里是滇西北的重要门户,如今 214 国道贯穿丽江全市,北可达西藏,南可至大理,交通十分便利。古城里聚居的居民以纳西藏同胞为主,是我国唯一的纳西藏自治区。丽江就以它巍峨壮丽的大雪山、碧波荡漾的泸沽湖和多姿多彩的少数民族风情而名世。1997 年 12 月,联合国教科研组织将丽江古城列入《世界遗产名录》。

让我们去玉龙桥。玉龙桥是进入古城区的最佳地点,它是古城与新城的分界点。桥的两头分别是不同时代建设的城市,在这种对比中,会对古城的价值产生更深刻的理解。从这里可沿三条路进入古城区:东大街、新义街和新华街。现在我们去前面的东大街。你们看!它宽敞笔直,沿街有仿古建筑,感觉亦古亦今。如果你从新义街进入古城区,同是石板路面,但有小桥、流水、垂柳,是典型的小城风光。第三条路径是新华街,它在玉龙桥西侧,狮子山东面,沿青石板路上一个缓坡即到。街边有古朴的铺面,加上纯朴的纳西居民,古城古风一览无遗。

首先我们将参观玉泉公园。玉泉公园位于城北一公里的象山脚下。在这里你可以看



到丽江古城里最有名的黑龙谭。黑龙潭潭面宽阔,潭水碧绿如玉,故又称为"玉泉"。玉 泉之水是从山麓的栗树丛中、岩石缝隙间渗流而出汇集而成的,因而水质明净,滋味甘 甜。玉泉公园最美的景色是远处的玉龙雪山在潭中的倒影,此处是古城观赏雪山的最佳 位置。站在潭南岸,眺望远处光芒万丈的玉龙雪山,碧水、雪山互为映衬,山林间不时 传来鸟鸣声和淙淙泉水,让人恍若置于身于人间仙境。

现在让我们参观狮子山,它因其形如狮子滚绣球而得名。狮子山最著名的满山翠绿 苍劲的松柏林。它们大都植于明代,树林有五六百岁了,是丽江经历沧桑变化的见证人。 狮子山上的万古楼是俯瞰全城的最佳之处。在这里往下看,古城高低起伏的巷道、房屋、 阡陌交通历历在目:请远眺四周,往北可以看到玉龙雪山,往南可以放眼文笔山,往西 可以遥看拉市海,丽江坝子的田园风光一览无余。

让我们参观白马龙谭。它位于狮子山南麓。潭水是由清澈明净的山泉喷涌而成。潭 边有三眼井,是古城居民日常用水处。三口井一字排开,头口为饮用水,另二口为洗菜 洗衣服用水,取水时绝不能相互混淆。古城人敬水若神,在潭边还建有观音寺。让我们 一一参观。

现在让我们去参观军民府。军民府衙位于狮子山东麓,始建与明洪武十五年(1368), 是与木家院建在一起的。当时木氏土司为世袭的当地最高统领,权倾一时,因而把府衙 与家院建在一起。后来又经过历代扩建,规模日益加大,成为一座边锤皇宫。军民府衙 署占地百多亩,分三个部分,西边为府署,中间是土司家院,东面为御花园。让我们现 在开始参观军民府衙署。



ightharpoonup hoart Three hoSupplementary Readings

The Ancient City of Pingyao

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Where is the Ancient City of Pingvao located? The Ancient City of Pingyao is located in middle of Shanxi Province.
- 2. When did the city first appeare?
 - The city first appeared in 827-782B.C..
- 3. How many traditional quadrangle residences of common people are there in the Ancient City of Pingvao?
 - Preserved in the ancient city are near 4 000 traditional quadrangle residences of common people
- 4. How many traditional quadrangle residences which are fairly intact are there in the Ancient City of Pingyao?
 - Over 400 traditional quadrangle residences.
- 5. Which Ancient City ranks as the only intact ancient city of the Ming and Qing Dynasties well preserved in China?

The Ancient City of Pingyao.

平遥古城

平遥古城位于山西省中部,与太原相距约 90 公里,是一座具有 2 700 多年历史的文化名城。平遥古城始建于西周宣王时期(前 827-前 782)。平遥古城内现今保存有近 4 000 处传统的四合院民居,它们大多有百年以上的历史,其中有四百余处保存得相当完好,还有少部分为明代和罕见的元代明居,十分珍贵。它是明清时期在中国唯一保存得最完美的古城。



The Yunnan Culture

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- How do you like Dongba culture as compared to those of other minorities in China?
 Dongba culture is fairly independent and mystic as compared to those of other minorities in China.
- 2. Why have some unique world cultural heritages like "Shangrila", and "Naxi classic music" survived here?
 - Because Yunnan is situated in the margin area and at the confluence of the Han culture, the Qinghai-Tibetan culture and Hinayana Buddhist culture of South and South-east Asia, some unique world cultural heritages like "Shangrila", and "Naxi classic music" have survived here.
- 3. What do you think of the culture of each group? Please give some examples. Each group has retained its rich and unique culture, such as festivals, language, costume, customs, proprieties, working and living style.
- 4. What is the origin of Dongba culture?

 Dongba religion is the origin of Dongba culture.
- 5. How do Mosuo people in Lake Lugu establish the marriage relationship between their men and women?
 - Mosuo people in Lake Lugu do not establish any formal marriage relationship between their men and women.



Four written linguistics of Naxi nationality have been handed down, namely, Dongbawen, Gebawen, Malimashawen, Dabawen, which are complicatedly interrelated with each other. 纳西族共有四种文字流传至今,分别是东巴文、哥巴文、玛丽玛莎文和达巴文,他们之间



具有非常复杂的关联性。

云南文化

云南具有悠久的历史和绚丽的文化。东巴文化与华夏大地上的汉文化和其它少数民族文化相比,具有一定的独立性和神秘性。历次考古发掘证明云南是人类的发祥地之一。由于云南文化处于汉文化、青藏文化和南亚、东南亚小乘佛教文化的边缘地带和交汇地区,这里保留着像"香格里拉"、"纳西古乐"等独具特色的世界文化遗产。

在独特的生活条件影响下,作为传承文化遗产的手段,云南民族创造和发展自己的语言,文字,音乐,绘画,建筑风格,服饰,宗教信仰和生活方式,每个都形成了自身民俗文化。"文献名邦"建水古城的孔庙仅次于山东孔庙。历代文豪马可·波罗、徐霞客、杨慎等,留下大量记载云南的历史、游记、诗文和画卷,为云南的文化和发展和介绍云南做出了重要贡献。除了汉族,25个少数民族以"大分散、小集中"的居住形态遍布云南各地。每一个民族都保留了其丰富独特的文化,比如节日、语言、服装、海关、礼仪、工作和生活方式等。

东巴文化的源头是东巴教。在信奉万物有灵及图腾崇拜当中,纳西先民们形成了自己的原始自然宗教—东巴教。东巴教初始于金沙江畔的哈巴雪山脚下的白地(今云南迪庆藏族自治州境内),东巴教笃信万物有灵,崇拜多神,在发展过程中它先后受到过藏族苯教、佛教和道教的影响。东巴教没有统一的组织和寺庙,却有丰富多彩的文字经典和繁缛的宗教礼仪,从多方面影响了纳西人的生活。纳西族的东巴经是至今存在并且还在使用的象形文字,是通向历史的隧道。泸沽湖摩梭人没有建立任何固定形式的男女婚姻关系。精美神奇的高原是自然的物化,正是这种不朽与博大塑造了一方水土的灵魂。



$lacksquare \mathbb{P}$ art Five $\,\,$ Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- Where is the ancient city of Lijiang located?
 It is located between the Jade Dragon Snow Mountain and Jinsha (Gold Sand) on the center of Lijiang valley.
- 2. How large an area does the ancient city of Lijiang cover? It covers an area of 3.8 km².
- 3. What is the ancient city of Lijiang famous for? The ancient city of Lijiang is famous for its grandiose snow clad mountain, the steep gorge, the elegant Mt Laojun, the clean Lugu Lake, and the colorful and various customs of the minorities.
- 4. When is the ancient city of Lijiang listed into the World Cultural Heritage List?
 In December of 1997, the ancient city of Lijiang is listed into the World Cultural Heritage



List.

5. Please describe Military and Family Mansion simply?

The complex now covers about 6.67 hectares, consisting of three parts: the government office at west, the family mansion in the middle and the imperial garden at east.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 这银行家一定是一个爆发户。

The banker must be an upstart.

2. 我想看更多的中国传统建筑。

I'd like to see more traditional Chinese building.

3. 同兴公镖局博物馆(Tongxinggong Armed Escort Company Museum)是明清风格的建筑群。

Tongxinggong Armed Escort Company Museum is a Ming styled complex.

4. 我将带你们去参观乔家大院(Qiao's Compound)。

I'll show you around Qiao's Compound.

5. 平遥曾经是中国的财政中心。

Pingyao used to be the financial center of China.

III. Translate the following passages into Chinese.

依崎岖地形而筑的丽江古城作为一处战略要冲和一处商业重地,保留了它精巧而始 终未变的历史面貌。古城的建筑风格充分体现了千百年来多种文化的相互融合。丽江还 拥有一处复杂而灵巧的古代供水系统,至今仍在有效地发挥作用。

依据文化标准第二、四、五条,1997年登记

——联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- T: I want to know more about this ancient city of Pingyao (我想对平遥古城了解得更多).
- G: Very good.Now, we are walking along Nandajie Street. <u>It is one of the best places where</u> you can explore the ancient Chinese culture (这是你探索古城文化最好的地方之一).
- T: Marvelous!I love these traditional Chinese buildings. Look! What are the rows of the shops along the street (沿街一排排的店子用来干什么)?
- G: We are standing in front of bazaar (我们正站在一个集市的前面). Here are over 700 stores and shops.
- T: It seems to me they are all curiosity shops. What is available in the shops?
- G: There is a dazzling array of art wares: antiques, furniture, ancient coins, Chinese paintings jade ware, lacquer ware and traditional folk clothing, etc. You can buy some souvenirs here if you like.



- T: The traditional buildings here are really attractive. Look over there! What is that magnificent shop? (那是多么豪华的店子啊?)
- G: This is a bank—Rishengchang Exchange Shop (日升昌票号). There were twenty-two banks in Pingyao out of the total fifty-one in China during the Qing Dynasty. Of these many banks, Rishengchang at No.105 in Nandajie is the most famous.

Unit Eight

Waterscape 第八单元 水景

俗语

蜀道难,难于上青天

Introduction

九寨沟以水美文明天下。三江并流地区是六千万年前喜马拉雅山造山运动的结果。 面积达 170 万公顷。在中国西南的横断区,在距离近数十公里的范围内,澜沧江、怒江、 金沙江三条亚洲级的大江悖逆东西流向,汇入南北走向的众山间深谷,呈"川"字型排 列,并肩奔流四百公里,气势磅礴地奔流到各自遥远的出海口。令人充分领略大自然造 物的神奇。

Discussion

- What is Jiuzhaigou Scenic Area admired for?
 Jiuzhaigou Scenic Area is admired for its amazing waters.
- 2. How was Three Parallel Rivers formed?

 The magnificence of the Three Parallel Rivers is the work of the mountain making by the Himalayas 60 million years ago, involving an area as vastas 1.7 million hectares.



游四川

(G=导游; T=游客)

游客: 您能介绍一下四川吗?

导游: 四川是大熊猫的故乡。卧龙自然保护区有大熊猫博物馆。

游客: 四川有什么特产?

导游: 四川出产水稻、小麦、辣椒和红薯。

游客: 您能介绍一下四川的主要景点吗?

导游:成都是三国时期蜀国的首都,是教育和工业中心。峨眉山是中国四大佛教名山之

一。生态旅游者应该去九寨沟。

游客:我有一天时间可以游览成都。我可以游览哪些地方?

导游: 你可以游览都江堰、武侯祠、青城山和杜甫草堂。

游客: 请详细说说。

导游:都江堰是古代灌溉工程,武侯祠是纪念诸葛亮的庙宇。

游客: 是的。杜甫草堂是唐代著名诗人杜甫的居所。

导游: 是的,杜甫在这个草堂住了4年,写下了240首歌。



hickspace extstyle ex

九寨沟风景名胜区

女士们, 先生们:

欢迎大家来九寨沟风景名胜区。今天我很高兴充当你们的导游。我们将参观九寨沟。首先,让我简单介绍一下九寨沟,它位于中国四川省阿坝藏族羌族自治州境内的九寨沟县中南部,因景区内藏族村寨而得名。1992 年被列入"世界自然遗产名录",1997 年纳入世界人与生物圈保护区,2001 年成为世界"21 世纪绿色环球"组织成员,2004 年被评为国家地质公园。水是九寨沟的灵魂,有"九寨归来不看水"之说。翠海、叠瀑、雪峰、彩林、藏情并称"九寨五绝"。春明媚、夏灿烂、秋绚丽、冬圣洁,齐山异水,佳景荟萃,三千幻境,四季童话。九寨沟,自然美景与浓郁的藏族风情充满梦幻与诗意,是自然造化赐予人类最美丽的乐土,是我们回归自然的精神家园。

这里已经开通树正、日则、则查洼、扎如四条旅游风景线,长 60 余公里。景观分布在树正、诺日朗、剑岩、长海、扎如、天海六大景区。以三沟 108 海为代表,包括五滩、17 瀑、10 流、数十泉等水景,与九寨 12 峰联合组成了高山河谷自然景观,四季景色迷人,令人向往。现在我们将沿着树正沟风景线参观九寨沟。树正沟是风景区内一条主要的旅游路线。从沟口到诺日朗群海,全长 14 公里。我们已经到达了沟口。这是风景区的大门,你们可以在这里购买门票及观光车票。现在让我们去芦苇海,它是进入九寨沟后的第一个海子,靠近盆景滩。看,这就是芦苇海。全长 2.2 公里,水很浅,是一个半沼泽形态的湖泊,海中芦苇丛生。一股翠绿晶莹的清流从芦苇中蜿蜒流过。春夏时节,清流与芦苇同色,满眼碧绿;秋冬之际,芦苇却一片金黄。让我们往上走,眼前的就是双龙海,位于芦苇海和火花海瀑布群之间。透过澄碧晶莹的湖水,可以见到海中有两条生物钙华礁堤,就象藏于海底的两条蛟龙,随时要腾空而起。让我们继续往上走一起去观看火花海。这就是火花海,它位于双龙海与卧龙海之间。湛蓝色的水面上,波平如镜。海子的四周是茂密的树林。每当晨曦初照,湖面因阳光的反射闪烁出朵朵火花。现在我们



来到了卧龙海。它小巧玲珑是蓝色湖泊的典型代表。湖面象一块光滑平整的蓝宝石。卧 龙海底有一条乳黄色的碳酸钙沉淀物,湖面平静时,透过清澈的湖水,它如同沉睡水底 的巨龙。

看!这些梯田状的湖泊就是树正群海,前后连绵数里,上下高差近百米。湖水自上 而下翻堤而过,在树丛中穿流,形成一道道宽平坦的瀑布,这一道道瀑布与急流串起树 正海中的各个海子,动静相隔。我们现在正在前往树正寨的途中。树正瀑布位于游人如 织的树正寨前的公路旁,瀑布宽 62 米,高 15 米。这是我们入沟见到的第一个瀑布,也 是九寨沟四大瀑布中最小的一个。现在,我们来到了树正寨。它是九寨沟中主要的投宿 中心之一。站在这里俯视河谷,下面是如珠链玉串般的树正群海。如果四处走走,就可 以见到富有藏族风情的旅馆。寨前有一座金黄色的佛塔,是藏民拜神念经的场所。寨里 面到处飘着经幡。让我们离开这里往上行。现在我们能看到犀牛海了,它是树正沟最大 的海子;长约两公里、水深18米、海拔2400米。传说古时候,有一位身患重病、奄奄 一息的藏族老喇嘛,骑着犀牛来到这里。当他饮用了这里的湖水后,病症竟然奇迹般的 消失了。于是老喇嘛便日夜饮用这里的湖水,最后竟然骑着犀牛进入海中。从此,这个 海子便称为犀牛海了。离开这里继续上行,便到达了树正沟的末端,九寨沟最大的游客 聚集点一诺日朗招待所。我们将住在这里,明天参观日则沟风景线。



Part Three Supplementary Readings

The Three Gorges

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What do the Three Gorges comprise?
 - The Three Gorges on the Yangtze River Valley comprise the Qutang Gorge, the Wu Gorge and the Xiling Gorge.
- 2. Where does the Three Gorges start?
 - The Three Gorges area starts from Baidicheng (the White Emperor Town), Fengjie in western Sichuan province.
- 3. What are the main differences between the three gorges? The Qutang Gorge is the most majestic, the Wuxia Gorge is pretty, and the Xiling Gorege is very dangerous.
- 4. What is the most splendid sight in the area of the Wu Gorge? The 12 Peaks of the Wu Mountains are the most splendid sights within the area of the Wu Gorge. The most famous sight of them is the Fairy Peak. It resembles a standing lady.
- 5. Where was the Three Gorges Dam been built? It was built in Sandouping, Yichang, Hubei province.





√ Words and Expressions

- 1. gorge n. 峡谷; 咽喉
- 2. comprise v. 由······组成
- 3. majestic adj. 雄伟的; 巍峨的, 庄严的
- 4. township n. 镇区
- 5. cliff n. 峭壁; 悬崖
- 6. steep adj. 陡峭的, 急剧上升的
- 7. precipice n. 悬崖, 绝壁
- 8. wealth n. 财产,财富
- 9. poem n. 诗句
- 10. amidst prep. 在·····中间
- 11. wind v. 盘绕, 缠绕; 弯曲前进
- 12. corridor n. 走廊, 通道
- 13. fairy *n*. 仙子, 小精灵
- 14. peak *n*. 顶点, 高峰
- 15. resemble v. 同······相似,与······类似
- 16. legend n. 传说, 传奇
- 17. descend v. 下来,下降
- 18. ensure v. 保证
- 19. treacherous adj. 靠不住的, 危险的
- 20. double v. 曲折迂回
- 21. turbulent adj. 骚乱的, 动乱的
- 22. current *n*. 水流, 气流
- 23. shoal n. 浅滩; 暗礁
- 24. strategic adj. 战略的
- 25. the Qutang Gorge 瞿塘峡
- 26. the Wu Gorge 巫峡
- 27. the Xiling Gorge 西陵峡



1. High cliffs and steep precipices with sharp edges rise one after another on either side of the narrow gorge.

狭窄的峡谷两岸,刀锋般的悬崖峭壁此起彼伏。

2. Xiling Gorge is a treacherous section which is 76 kilometers long. The waterway in this section doubles and turbulent currents and dangerous shoals can be seen here and there.



西陵峡全程 76 公里,沿途变化莫测,多险滩急流,航道曲折迂回。

长江山峡

长江三峡是瞿塘峡、巫峡和西陵峡三大峡谷的总称。三峡风景区西起四川省奉节县 的白帝城, 东至湖北官昌南津关, 全长 193 公里。三峡风景区是国内外旅游胜地。

三大峡谷各具特色,人们常说:"瞿塘雄,巫峡秀,西陵险"。

瞿塘峡是三峡的第一部分。它从白帝城延伸至巫山具的大溪镇区,全长 8 公里。狭 窄的峡谷两岸, 刀锋般的悬崖峭壁此起彼伏。旅游者抬头仰望, 辽阔的天空变成一条银 线。瞿塘峡里有一座著名的白帝城。它已有两千年的历史,那里藏有蜀汉时期的许多历 史古迹。著名诗人李白写了一首诗赞扬它,诗中说:"朝辞白帝彩云间,千里江陵一日还"。

巫峡很优美,全长44公里。它宛若一个曲折的风景画走廊。巫山十二峰是最精彩的 风景区,而神女峰又是她们中最著名的。神女峰就像一位亭亭玉立的少女。传说,她是 皇母娘娘的女儿,她来到人间是想帮助大禹治水。她果断地站在男士们中间已保证大小 船只顺利通过山峡。她出现在云雾缭绕中,显得格外地美丽与神秘。

西陵峡全程76公里,沿途诡秘多变,滩险水急,礁石林立,航道曲折迂回。西陵峡 因它的战略重要性而著名。

著名的三峡大坝修建在湖北省宜昌市的三斗坪。1992年三峡工程获得中国全国人民 代表大会批准,1994年正式动工兴建,2003年开始蓄水发电,2009年全部完工。大坝不 仅是世界上规模最大的水电站,而且是中国有史以来最大的工程建设项目。



The Ba and Shu Cultures

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. How did Ba-shu cultural community form? The formation and development of Ba-shu cultural community underwent a long process of contact, exchange and mingling.
- 2. What do you think is the future development direction of cooperation of Chongqing culture and Sichuan culture?

The integrating the characteristics of Ba and Shu cultures is the future development direction of cooperation of Chongqing culture and Sichuan culture.

巴蜀文化

巴蜀文化是华夏文化的重要部分。巴主要指今天的重庆,蜀主要指今天的四川。巴 蜀文化共同体的形成与发展,经历了长期接触、交流与融会的过程。巴文化与蜀文化同 根同源,同质同体,两者相互最高的文化认同,是巴蜀文化共同体形成的基础;巴与蜀 的互补结构及其差异性发展,是巴蜀文化共同发展的动力;巴与蜀的特色整合,是川渝



文化合作未来发展的方向。

重庆位于四川的东部,历史上是四川的一部分;1997年重庆成为直辖市,四川与重 庆正式独立分开。远古时代这里生活着巴人和蜀人有两个族系,他们分别建立了自己的 国家。巴族的记载最早见于殷墟的甲骨文中。早期的巴人以狩猎、捕鱼为生,居石穴。 他们来到川东地区定居。公元前 316 年, 在秦国的统治下, 巴人散落于湘西和湖北西南 的崇山峻岭之中。有人认为湘鄂西部的武陵山脉是古代巴人最后的家园。今天的土家族 人仍然有古代巴人的许多风俗习惯。

当时中国各部落间战争不断,巴人在战争中败给了其他部落,被迫从湘鄂西部乘独 木舟迁往重庆。20世纪50年代,考古学家在巴县和重庆都发现不少船棺。令人惊奇的是, 古代巴人用造独木舟的方式制造船棺,船棺就是他们死后的家。在河两旁的悬崖上人们 能看见许多悬棺和船棺。巴人是典型的河居民族。这些船棺书写了古代巴人历史的重要 一部分。

远在距今 4 500 年左右, 在成都平原就已经产生了作为蜀文化源头的新石器时代晚期 文化。保墩遗址既是城都平原最早的古城址的典型。三星堆和金沙遗址的发掘表明,远 在西周以前,川西平原就有一支与中原文化有别的、地方特色浓厚的土著文化——蜀文化 的存在。蜀文化从距今四五千年的新石器时代晚期兴起,逐渐融为巴蜀文化。三星堆考 古挖掘说明,巴文化和蜀文化有着深厚的历史渊源。

古巴蜀文化留下的遗迹以大石遗迹和巴人悬棺最引人注目。古蜀人有一种以大石为 葬具或墓志的文化传统,形成了"大石文化"。巴蜀人创造了辉煌灿烂的古巴蜀文明,三 星堆文化是古蜀文化鼎盛时期的代表。2000 多年的前修建的水利工程都江堰,至今担负 灌溉成都平原的巨大作用,属于世界文化遗产; 道教起源于四川青城山, 是中国惟一的 本土宗教。色彩艳丽的蜀绣蜀锦、百菜百味的川菜和清幽闲适的茶文化等都是古巴蜀文 化的具体表现。



I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. Where is Jiuzhaigou located?
 - Jiuzhaigou is located in the south-center of Jiuzhaigou County that is within the border of Aba Autonomous Prefecture of Tibet and Qiang minorities Sichuan Province, China.
- 2. What is Jiuzhaigou's social reputation?
 - It was listed in the "Catalog of World Nature Heritage" in 1992 and brought in to the World Biosphere Preservation Zone in the year of 1997. It became the world organization member of "21st Century Green the World Wide "in 2001. In 2004, it was honored the National Geographical Garden.
- 3. What are main tour routes in Jiuzhaigou? Shuzhen, Rize, Zechawa, and Zharu, altogether over 60 km long.
- 4. What do you think of Shuzheng Gully?



It is a primary tour route of the scenic area, about 14 km long from the gully entrance up to Nuorilang lakes.

5. Can you describe Shuzheng Lakes?

Shuzheng Lakes stretch out for kilometers with a height difference of about 100 m. The lakes run over one dyke-after another among the trees and bushes to form wide and foaming waterfalls. These cascading falls of gushing waters link up the lakes of Shuzheng, adding to their beauty the alternating static and dynamic impact.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 四川是大熊猫的故乡。

Sichuan is a homeland of pandas.

2. 都江堰是古代灌溉工程。

Dujiangvan is an ancient irrigation system.

3. 洞庭湖是中国最大的湖泊。

Dongting Lake is the largest lake in China.

4. 成都是三国时期蜀国的首都。

Chengdou was the capital of Shu during the Three Kingdoms.

5. 成都是教育和工业中心。

Chengdu is an educational and industrial center.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. Jiuzhaigou was listed in the "Catalog of World Nature Heritage" in 1992 and brought into the World Biosphere Preservation Zone in the year of 1997. It became the world organization member of "21 st century Green the World Wide" in 2001. In 2004, it was honored the National Geographical Garden.

1992 年被列入"世界自然遗产名录", 1997 年纳入世界人与生物圈保护区, 2001 年成 为世界"21世纪绿色环球"组织成员,2004年被评为国家地质公园。

2. Water is the soul of Jiuzhaigou and there is a saying "after returning back from Jiuzhaigou, one would not enjoy other sight seeing of water any more". The jade green sea, repeated water falls, snow cover peaks, the color forest, and the passion of Tibet are called "Five Miracles of Jiuzhaigou".

水是九寨沟的灵魂,有"九寨归来不看水"之说。翠海、叠瀑、雪峰、彩林、藏情并 称"九寨五绝"。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

Mt. Emei

(G=Tour Guide, T=Tourist)

G: Look at the archway! It is inscribed with four Chinese characters: Tian Xia Ming Shan (天



- 下名山). It means a Famous Mountain under the Heaven. On its back side are inscribed another four Chinese characters: Fo Jiao Sheng Di. <u>It means a Buddhist Holy Land.</u> (它的意思就是佛教胜地)
- T: That's great! We heard Mt. Emei is one of the four most famous Buddhist mountains in China (我们听说峨眉山是中国的四大佛教名山). UNESCO put it on the list of the World Natural and Cultural Heritages in 1996. Can you take us around the Wannian Temple?
- G: OK. <u>Now we are standing in front of the Wannian Temple</u> (现在我们正站在万年寺的前面). The temple was built in the Jin Dynasty.It was originally called Puxian Temple. Later in the Ming Dynasty, Emperor Shenzong renamed it Wannian Temple.
- T: Why is it named Wannian Temple (那就是为什么被命名为万年寺)? Does it mean the temple can survive ten thousand years?
- G: Not exactly! For many years Shenzong's mother was not pregnant, for the emperor had many concubines. She was very worried that she may be discarded someday by the emperor (她担心她可能被皇帝抛弃). So she traveled all the way from Beijing to Mt. Emei and arrived at the temple. She piously prayed to Puxian Bodhisattva for a baby. After she came back to Beijing she got a son. Later her son became an emperor. He was the Emperor Shenzong.
- T: It is really a miracle!
- G: Shenzong was grateful to his mother, so he renamed it Wannian Temple, just to show his gratitude and to wish his mother to have a long life.



- 1. archway n. 拱门, 牌楼, 牌坊
- 2. pregnant adj. 怀孕的, 孕育的
- 3. concubine *n*. 妾, 妃子
- 4. discard v. 丢弃, 抛弃
- 5. Mt.Emei 峨眉山
- 6. Wannian Temple 万年寺
- 7. Jin Dynasty 晋朝
- 8. Puxian Temple Bodhisattva 普贤菩萨
- 9. Emperor Shenzong (明朝) 神宗皇帝

Unit Nine

Mountain Range 第九单元 山脉

俗语

寿比南山, 福如东海

Introduction

黄山以"中国最可爱的山"而闻名,黄山曾在文学和艺术作品中留下过历史的辉煌(如16世纪中叶有明代的黄山"山水画片");今天,黄山同样为前来朝圣的游客,诗人、画家和摄影家所迷恋,由奇峰怪石和苍茫云海组成的壮观风景使它饮誉中外。

依据文化标准第二条,自然标准第三、四条,1990年登记。

——联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员

Discussion

- What was Huangshan known as?
 It is known as the loveliest mountain of China.
- 2. Why does Huangshan hold the same fascination for visitors, poets, painters and photographers who come on pilgrimage to the site?
 - Huangshan is renowned for its magnificent scenery made up of many granite peaks and rocks emerging out of a sea of clouds.



$igoplus_{igoplus} \mathbb{P}$ art One $\,\,$ Situational Dialogue $\,\,$

Travel in Anhui 游安徽

(G=导游: T=游客)

导游: 先生们、女士们, 欢迎大家来到安徽! 合肥是安徽省的省会, 它因南淝河与北淝河汇合于此而得名。

游客: 这是我第一次来安徽, 这里最著名的景色是什么?

导游: 黄山是国家重点风景名胜区。

游客: 怎么有名呢?

导游: 黄山向来以奇山、怪石、云海、温泉"四绝"著称与世。

导游: 我对寺庙感兴趣, 你能介绍一下吗?

游客: 九华山, 是四大佛教名山之一, 有78座明清寺庙, 6800尊佛像和99座主峰。

游客:太好了。明天去参观他们。今天还有点时间想在市区到处看看,你说去哪儿好呢?

导游: 合肥市内主要有包公祠堂、逍遥津公园和教弩台。

游客: 合肥是度假者理想的地方, 你认为怎样游览?

导游:你可以先去逍遥津公园,就在城市中心附近。1700年前,即三国时期,魏国的大将张辽曾在此处与无国的大将孙权展开激战。现被辟为公园,内有三个小岛,其中一个岛上就有张将军的衣冠冢和雕像。

游客:哪个景点靠近逍遥津公园?

导游: 逍遥津公园以南两公里外是教弩台,曹操曾经在此训练强弩手。这里有古典建筑, 水榭亭阁。

游客: 太好了!

导游:此外,你还可以去包公祠,就在市中心,是纪念铁面无私的名臣包拯的专祠。

游客:谢谢你给我们提供这么多信息。.

导游:不客气。



>> Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

黄 山

女士们, 先生们!

现在我们已经到达黄山风景区南边山脚下的汤口镇。在这里先向诸位简单介绍一下黄山风景的概况。



黄山被称为"天下第一奇山",兼有泰山之雄伟,庐山之飞瀑,衡山之怪石,峨眉之 清凉。在中国流传一句著名的俗语:"五岳归来不看山,黄山归来不看岳"。

黄山高耸于安徽省南部,高达 1 680 米。秦代时人们称它黟山,公元 747 年改名为黄 山、据说皇帝曾在此炼丹。在中国古代、黄色仅是皇氏家族的颜色。

黄山区域总面积 1 200 平方公里, 其中主要景区 154 平方公里, 包括 72 座山峰。天 都峰、莲花峰和光明顶海拔都在1800米之上。

看那座峰,那就是天都峰,黄山最险峻的山峰。让我们来看看文人对山峰的描述:"鸟 儿难以立足,就连猴子也望而生畏"。天都峰最险之处称为"鲫鱼背"。你们知道为什么 称它"鲫鱼背"吗?它是一狭长石岗,中央隆起,形如鱼背,长约20米,宽约1米。现 在让我们往上走,登顶我们可以见到大字石刻:登峰造极。

莲花峰为黄山最高峰。看,它就象一朵真正的莲花正在仰天怒放。现在我们来观看 光明顶。状若覆钵,旁无依附,秋水银河,长空一色。有句俗语:"不到光明顶,不见黄 山景"。

黄山向来以奇松、怪石、云海、温泉著称于世。黄山拥有二湖、三瀑、十六泉、二 十四溪相映成趣。你的感觉好象置身于世外桃源。此外,黄山的野生动植物和水资源非 常丰富。这也是为什么黄山是如此惊人的原因。

让我们休息一会儿,看一看这儿的景色。这一切都显得与众不同。我真正希望你们 享受这次旅行。



lacktriangle lacktriangl

Five Sacred Mountains

Exercises: After reading the passage, please answer the following questions.

- 1. Which mountain is one of the five sacred Buddhist Mountains in China? Heng Mountain (or Nan Yue).
- 2. What are the five scared mountains? Tai Mountain, Hua Mountain, Heng Mountain, Bei Yu, Song Mountain.
- 3. Which mountain has been honored as "the first of the five sacred mountains in China"? Tai Mountain has been honored as "the first" of the five sacred mountains in China.
- 4. Which of the five sacred mountains is the most precipitous? Hua Mountain is the most precipitous (险峻的) of the five mountains.
- 5. Which mountain is located 85km southwest of Zhengzhou? Song Mountain (or Song Shan).



Culture on Mt. Huangshan

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Who stayed at Mt Huangshan and made elixir before succeeding his cultivation and becoming an immortal in the heaven?
 - Yellow Emperor, the ancestor of Chinese people.
- 2. What is recognized as the most glorious chapter of the long history of the traditional Chinese painting?
 - Mt Huangshan paintings.
- 3. Which temples are honored as the "four great temples"?
 Icon Temple, Mercy Light Temple, Azure Sky Temple, and Thrown Bowl Temple are honored as the "four great temples".
- 4. What features do the rock inscriptions in Huangshan have?

 They have two clear features: one is that they are scattered along and integrated with the tour route with easy and short accessibility that enrich the pleasure of the tour; the other is they are carved on the cliffs and united as one with the mountain in a very natural manner.
- 5. What is a shining pearl of the culture in Mt Huangshan?

 The Huangshan school of Chinese painting is a shining pearl of the culture in Mt Huangshan.

黄山文化

黄山是文化名山,源远流长。相传中华民族的始祖皇帝曾在黄山炼丹,后得道升天。 黄山富诗意、含蓄深邃的景观,诱发了人们无限的遐想和创作激情。从盛唐到晚清,描 写黄山的散文有数百篇,歌咏黄山的诗词有两百多首。"黄山画"更是中国画历史长卷中 最辉煌的篇章。

宗教文化

黄山与宗教有密切的关系。黄山山名与炼丹有关。唐代道教旧籍中,关于轩辕皇帝和容成子、浮丘公来黄山炼丹、得道升天的故事,流传千年,影响深广。道教在黄山建立较早的道观有浮丘观、九龙观等。宋末道士张尹甫在黄山修炼,创建了松谷道场。佛教早在南朝刘宋间就已传入黄山,历代先后修建寺庙近百座。寺庙之中,祥符寺、慈光寺、翠微寺和掷钵禅院被称为黄山"四大丛林"。

黄山艺术

黄山的故事传说如皇帝炼丹、李白醉酒、仙人指路、仙女绣花等广为传送。黄山伟 大的自然美,使无数艺术家为之赞叹和陶醉,产生无法抑制的创作激情,留下了不可胜 数的艺术作品。就诗文而言,李白、贾岛、范成大、石涛、龚自珍、黄炎培、董必武、



郭沫若、老舍等都有不少以黄山为主题的佳作流传于世。散文中,徐霞客的《游黄山日 记》、袁玫的《游黄山记》、叶圣陶的《黄山三天》、丰子恺的《上天都》等都体现了黄山 绝美秀丽的风姿。从明代嘉庆时期开始就有黄山的绘画作品描述黄山的美丽景色。黄山 画派成为黄山文化的一颗璀璨的明珠。

摩崖石刻

摩崖石刻体现了壮观的文化特色。在主要景区,就有摩崖石刻两百处。遍布黄山的 摩崖石刻,有两个显著特点:一是它们分布在道路近旁,与游览路线紧密结合,游人可 以就近欣赏,增加游兴:二是均刻在石壁上,与山体结合在一起,浑然天成。

摩崖石刻的内容也抓住了自然景物和环境气氛的特点,进行艺术概括,起到了画龙 点睛、烘托景物的作用,以帮助领悟自然美景的特征,启发人们联想,激化人们对景生 情。摩崖石刻以及它的深邃意境反映了中国自然风景的民族特色。



lacksquare lacksquare Art Five $\,\,$ Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. Why is Mt. Huangshan called "the most spectacular mountain in the world"? Becaues it is magnificent as Mt. Taishan, refreshing as Mt. Emei, and misty and cloudy as Mt. Hengshan. In addition, Mt. Huangshan has the waterfalls which can be compared to that of Mt. Lushan.
- 2. Why is the Celestial Capital Peak is the most precipitous peak of Mt. Huangshan? Describe it briefly.

Birds find it difficult to set their feet on it, and monkeys are scared to climb up to it.

- 3. Why is the Heavenly Capital Peak called the Back of a Carp? Because it is a rectangle protruding stone hillock in the shape of a carp back.
- 4. Which peak is the highest peak of Mt. Huangshan? Lotus Peak.
- 5. What are popularly known as the "Four Wonders"? Strange pines, grotesque rocks, sea of clouds, and hot springs.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 人们常说:"黄山归来不看岳"。

A popular saying goes: "Having seen the Huangshan Mountain, you have no interest in other mountains however famous they may be."

2. 请给我们介绍一下这些山峰好吗?

Would you please tell us something about these peaks?

3. 那是最高峰吗?

Is that the highest peak?



- 4. 莲花峰为黄山最高峰,海拔1873米。
 - The highest peak is called the Lotus Flower Peak. It is 1 873 meters above sea level.
- 5. 天都峰是黄山最险峻的山峰。
 - The Heavenly Capital Peak is the most precipitous peak of Mount Huangshan.

III. Translate the following passages into Chinese.

- The Miao Culture is mainly distributed in Guizhou, Hunan, Yunan and Guangxi provinces or autonomous regions. They like to live in compact communities in some mountainous regions.
 - 苗族主要分布在贵州、湖南、云南和广西诸省自治区境内。他们喜欢聚集在山区里。湖南和广西诸省或自苗族有自己的口头语言,属汉藏系苗瑶族苗语支,但直到上实际五十年代末,苗族才创造了以拉丁字母系统文字,有了自己的书面语言。
- 2. The Miao people believe in the sagacity of all things on the earth. They worship nature and offer sacrifices to their ancestors, especially on the occasions of their traditional festivals and friends in order to promote affections and family harmony.
 - 苗族相信世间万物皆有灵性。他们崇拜自然,尤其在庆祝传统节日时要向祖先献祭祀。在节日里他们宰牛、吹芦笙、跳舞与亲友一起聚餐,以尊敬亲情和家庭和谐。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

- G: <u>According to our schedule</u> (按照我们的时间安排), today we are going to climb the Huangshan Mountain. Have you put on your hiking shoes? (你们穿好了登山鞋吗?)
- T: I've got everything ready for an early start. (我一切就绪就等着早点出发了。)
- G: Great, let's go!
- T: How high is the Huangshan Mountain? (黄山有多高?)
- G: It towers to the height of 1 680 meters.
- T: Why is it called the Yellow Mountain?
- G: In ancient times, yellow was the Chinese imperial color. It is believed that Huang Di once made pills of immortality here, so you can easily understand the significance of such a name (这样你就很容易理解其名字的含义了).

Unit Ten

Mountains and Water 第十单元 山水景观

俗语

桂林山水甲天下, 阳朔山水甲桂林

Introduction

中国位于亚洲东部太平洋西岸;中国是一个多山地区具有巍峨雄壮的高山;山脉,高原和丘陵约占全国百分之六十五的陆地。珠穆朗玛峰,海拔 8 848.13 米,是世界最高的山。中国山区百分之九十是森林,百分之七十七的牧场,百分之七十六的湖泊和百分之九十八的水电资源。渤海、东海,南海、黄海环抱中国东部和东南沿海。中国拥有 50 000 条河流,每条河流排水面积超过 100 平方公里相当于 38.6 平方英里。大运河是古代中国一个伟大的水利工程。中国已超过 370 大湖泊,其中有五大淡水湖;鄱阳湖是最大的淡水湖,洞庭湖第二大。

Discussion

- Why do people say China is a very mountainous region?
 China has not only spectacular mountains, but also mountain range, plateaus and hills account for about 65 percent of the country's landmass.
- 2. How did the author describe Chinese water region?

Mountainous areas are covered by 76 percent of its lakes and 98 percent of its hydropower resources. The Bohai Sea, East China Sea, Yellow Sea and South China Sea embrace the east and southeast coast of China. China boasts 50 000 rivers, each has a drainage area of over 100 square kilometers or 38.6 square miles. The Grand Canal was a great water project in ancient China. China has more than 370 large lakes including the five major freshwater lakes. Poyang Lake is the largest freshwater one. Tongting Lake is second largest freshwater one.



Part One Situational Dialogue

游广西

导游: 先生们、女士们,欢迎大家来到广西!广西人民的文化生活丰富多彩。这里浓郁的少数民族风情吸引着大批中外游客。

游客: 为什么这么说?

导游: 因为广西是多个少数民族聚集区域。

游客: 您能为我们介绍一下广西著名的风景吗?

导游: 桂林山水甲天下,阳朔山水甲桂林。桂林以蜿蜒的漓江和桃花江闻名遐迩。

游客: 我们明天想游漓江,希望您能给我们提供一些参考建议。

导游: 漓江游吸引众多游客。你们最好乘船顺流而下,观赏漓江从桂林到阳朔之间83公里的山水风景。

游客: 听起来真不错。

导游: 只有真正顺流而下观赏,才能真正体会到中国山水画的真味,才能真正领略桂林山水的四大特点,即山青、水秀、洞奇、石美。这一段水域被看作是绝好的天然 艺术画廊。

游客: 太好了。我打算去。除了桂林广西还有其他的名胜吗?

导游: 北海银滩具有沙白、海静、水青、浪软的特点。

游客: 知道了, 还有别的风光吗?

导游: 广西还有如凭祥、东兴等独具特色的中越边关城镇。祝你们在广西玩得开心!

游客:广西真是一个令人神往的旅游观光度假胜地。我怎样一一游览呢?

导游: 您可以现在在这儿预约。



Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

桂林风光

先生们,女士们:上午好!

欢迎你们来到桂林!首先,让我来简单地介绍一下桂林。桂林是一座历史悠久的山水文化名城;有一句著名的俗语:桂林山水甲天下。古往今来多少名人墨客为之倾倒为之赞叹。早在唐宋时期,桂林山水就留下了古人寻芳揽胜的足迹和吟咏赞美的诗篇。在桂林,江作青罗带,山如碧玉簪。晴则青峰倒映,明媚溢彩;雨则云雾缭绕,烟波渺茫。群峰倒影山浮水,无水无山不入神。

人们常说桂林山水美美在"山青、水秀、洞奇、石美"。这句话形象地概括了桂林山水的基本特点。以漓江为轴线的桂林山水地处湘桂走廊西南,具有优越的地理位置和独特的地貌景观。这里气候宜人,雨量充沛;这里峰峦环立,河溪网络。丰厚的文化积淀



和多姿多彩的民俗风情构成了极其丰富多彩的旅游资源使桂林成为国际旅游城市。神姿仙态桂林的山,如情似梦漓江的水。桂林是个山城具有典型喀斯特地貌特征的石灰岩。经过亿万年的岁月沧桑,由原来沧海里的岛屿与礁石演变成现在的群山。桂林岩溶成为世界上发育最完美最典型面积最大的岩溶地貌景观。这些多样性的景观地貌构成了桂林群峰林立千姿百态的美景。这里有自隋唐起就成为旅游胜地的"七星岩",有被誉为"大自然艺术之宫的芦笛岩"也有近年来新开发的"银子岩"等等。有的洞分几层如楼阁迷宫;有的溶洞更与地下暗河相通极为神奇;其洞内的钟乳石、石笋、石柱、石幔和石花无不造型生动逼真传神。在迷离的烟雨中在江水的倒映下这些奇峰若隐若现。有的仿佛龙钟老者,还有一些像骆驼。眼前的这座山就象饮水的大象,它就是著名的象鼻山,它有一个很大的天然洞。古时候当地人们在象背上建了一个塔;形成了很和谐的景色。桂林的"水秀"当首推漓江。百里漓江,百里画廊;两岸群峦起伏,青峰翠竹;掩映着四周农舍。穿行在崇山峻岭之中的漓江蜿蜒而行从桂林市区缓缓流过。将沿江奇山丽景如同珍珠般串起,成为举世闻名的旅游黄金水道。

进入新世纪以来桂林进行了大规模的城市改造和建设使城市面貌焕然一新。新的思维和观念创造出新的旅游方式。一些原有的景区景点经过重新包装后焕发出新的活力,一些新的景区景点被成功开发和推出。而旅游方式也从单纯的观光旅游发展到极富特色的自然山水生态观光旅游、历史文化体验游、休闲度假游和民族风情采风游。2004 年桂林被评为"中国最具有魅力的城市"。一个崭新的桂林呈现在世人面前。桂林这颗璀璨的明珠将变得更加耀眼夺目。让我们一同走近它走进永远是春天的新桂林。



Part Three Supplementary Readings

Sightseeing of Yangshuo

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- What is Longjing River resort famous for?
 Longjing River resort is famous for its driftage, catering, lodging, and walking tour.
- Where Butterfly Spring is located?Butterfly Spring is located on the way to the famous Moon Hill.
- 3. Describe the scenic spot with the big banyan tree in detail.

 The big banyan tree has stood there for 1 400 years. It is said that under the tree, Liu Sanjie promised to become the wife of a young man named Arniu. On the side of a hill about 1km away from the Big Banyan Tree (big banyan tree) there is a hole. The shape of the hole, when looked at from different angles, will change the way that of the moon does. That is why the hill with the hole is called "the moon hill".
- 4. How old is the big banyan tree? 1 400 years.
- 5. Who regarded the place where the Yu Long River and the Jinbao River meet as the most

beautiful in the world?

Dr Karl

阳朔风光

在中国的南部,有一个最美丽的地方那就是广西桂林阳朔县。在那里,"水似青罗带,山如碧玉簪",民间有句著名的俗语"桂林山水甲天下,阳朔山水甲桂林。"在阳朔有许多著名的旅游景区。

龙颈河景区

龙颈河景区是一处以漂流、餐饮、住宿、徒步观光为一体的避暑休闲胜地。漂流让人吃惊、令人兴奋和使人觉得有趣。漂流中心区位于阳朔县兴坪镇大源林场内,离阳朔县城 28 公里,距闻名天下的漓江尽 5 公里。这里空气清新,山峦叠嶂,沟壑纵横,终年清溪飞瀑,漂流河段长 6 公里,河流落差达 220 米的双人艇情侣漂,顺流连船带人直冲入潭,舟飞浪起,有惊无险。

蝴蝶泉景区

蝴蝶泉景区位于阳朔月亮山十里画廊的精华旅游地段,有阳朔唯一的原始吊桥、高山音乐流水瀑布、可鸟瞰阳朔[香格里拉]遇龙河和羊角山等精华田园风光的最佳观赏台、蜜蜂园、目前全国最大的活蝴蝶观赏园等景点,还有[岩壁上的芭蕾舞]攀岩最时尚的户外运动项目,让您超脱喧嚣尘世,最近具体感受自然,挑战极限,超越自我。

大榕树风景区

大榕树已经有1400年了。据说在大榕树下,有一个刘三姐(或在刘氏家族中的第三姐妹)与一个中国壮族传奇民谣歌手"阿牛哥"的爱情故事。著名电影"刘三姐"大多数的照片就在那里拍摄。来自哈佛的卡尔博士认为遇龙河和金宝河会合是中国最美的地方。大约离大榕树约一公里远的山上有一个洞,从不同的角度观看,此洞形状也在不断变化能呈现出多种月亮形状;这就是为什么这座山被称为"月亮山"的理由。



Rivers and Lakes

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- How have geographers divided China's rivers into two types?
 According to regional differences between the south and north, geographers have divided China's rivers into two types, southern and northern, taking the Qinling Mountains and Huaihe River as the line of demarcation.
- 2. What is the largest river in China? How long is it? The Yangtze, 6 300 km long, is the largest river in China.
- 3. What was one of the birthplaces of ancient Chinese civilization?
 The Yellow River valley was one of the birthplaces of ancient Chinese civilization.



- 4. What is the largest freshwater lake? Where is it located? Poyang Lake is the largest freshwater lake, located on the southern bank of the Yangtze River in Jiangxi Province.
- 5. How is the Three Ponds Reflecting the Moon formed? Three stone pagodas are graceful in rippling the lake. Each pagoda has five round openings. At the Mid-Autumn moonlight night, if lamp candles are lighted in each tower and the mouth of the hole is covered by tissue, lamplight sends out through the tissue, just like the round moon. Wait until bright moon passes overhead, the moonlight, lighting and silver lake

enhance each other's beauty. Moonlight shadow, tower shadow and cloudy shadow show up

河流、湖泊

中国河流丰富。根据南北地区的差异,地理学家以秦岭—淮河作为分界线将中国河流分为两种类型—南部河流和北部河流。长江长 6 300 公里,是中国最长的河流,仅次于非洲的尼罗河和南美的亚马逊河。素有"黄金水道"之称,长江是一条交通大动脉通过优良的航道连接西部和东部。著名的长江山峡,长 209 公里,位于长江的上游。长江中下游地区由于气候温暖湿润、雨量充沛、土壤肥沃而成为重要的农业区。黄河是中国第二大长河,长 5 464 公里,是中国古代文明的发源地。黄河流域是中国古代文明的发祥地之一。它的沿岸植被丰富,农业繁荣并且拥有丰富的矿藏。

鄱阳湖是中国最大的淡水湖,它位于长江南岸的江西省。鄱阳湖拥有丰富的水生植物,这使其具有适合许多稀有淡水鱼物种生存的环境。此外,许多珍稀鸟类也被吸引到湖中来,使之成为非常受欢迎的鸟类观测站。鄱阳湖是中国广阔领土上的一颗璀璨明珠。杭州以西湖而著名,这个区域特别美丽;占地面积 5.66 平方公里,湖水平均约 1.5 米深。三潭映月是游客最感兴趣的地方。三个石塔,亭亭玉立在碧波荡漾的湖面上。每个塔有五个圆空。中秋月夜,在塔里点上灯烛,洞口蒙上薄纸,灯光从纸中透出,宛如一轮明月。等到皓月当空时,月光、灯光和湖光交相辉映,月影、塔影、云影相互映衬。湖中倒影好像许多月亮在水面跳舞。



their advantages mutually.

Part Five Consolidation

- I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.
- Why is Guilin a famous cultural city with a long history?
 Many famous people and writers of all ages have admired it. They had been left footprints and many poems for Guilin scenery since the Tang dynasty and Song dynasty.
- 2. What differences are there about Gulin's sightseeing between fine day and rainy day?

 In Guilin, the river is like a green ribbon, while the hills are emerald hairpins. The blue peaks are emitting full of clear sighted colors with its reflections in the fine days. There are wreathing clouds and fogs over the smoke-covered water as it rains.

- 3. What are the basic characters of Guilin landscape?

 Green hills, graceful water, fantastic caves and imposing rocks.
- 4. What are features of Guilin's city?
 Guilin is the mountain city with the typical karst lime stones.
- 5. Why is the hundred-kilometer Li River called the hundred-kilometer gallery?

 There are abrupt hills beside the riverbank waving the blue peaks and emerald bamboos setting off one another with farm houses around. The Li River penetrating in mountains and hills zigzags passing by the Guilin city district. The spectacular scenes along the riverside like a chain of pearls and have become a world-famous-tourism golden waterway.

II. Translate the following passage into English.

Let's Fly! Enjoy Yourself Among the Beautiful landscape

Yangshuo is a world well-known tourist place for its beautiful landscape with clean rivers winding its way around the country and a thousand hills near by. However, it may be a real pity if unable to appreciate the whole scenery. Guilin Flying Balloon Club serves tourists with hot balloon for sightseeing, by taking the hot balloon you can enjoy yourself among the beautiful landscape of Yangshuo county.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

贵宾搭乘热气球注意事项

热气球搭乘活动是现今最安全的休闲飞行运动,但有下列情况贵宾禁止搭乘:

- 1. 患有心脏病患者:
- 2. 有癫痫症患者;
- 3. 四个月以上孕妇;
- 4. 酒精浓度达到摇晃站立不稳者:
- 5. 精神恍惚或精神状态不佳者。

其它

- 1. 热气球依照天气因素作为安全施放标准,飞行教练有权于飞行中因气候及贵宾个人因素影响安全飞行时,随时中止飞行活动。
 - 2. 热气球因受气候因素影响,凡预约搭乘之贵宾因气候因素无法搭乘时,可以退费。
 - 3. 非气候因素影响取消搭乘活动,不予退费。
 - 4. 搭乘热气球活动时, 请穿着休闲服装及休闲运动鞋。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Guide, T=Tourists)

- G: Look, this is Elephant Trunk Hill (这就是象鼻山).
- T: Fantastic, it really looks like an elephant. (它真的象一头大象呢。)



- G: Yes, Elephant Trunk Hill is a rock hill by the river, but it naturally has a big hole in it, which gives the rock the appearance of an elephant gulping water (这就使山的外观酷似一头用鼻 吸水的大象).
- T: Yes. It's magic. (真神奇)
- G: Sure, it's interesting that local people built a pagoda (当地人建了一个塔) on the elephant's back in ancient times.
- T: They are a harmonious group of scenery (它们是很和谐的景色).

Unit Eleven

Forest Parks in China 第十一单元 中国森林公园

俗语

留得青山在, 不怕没柴烧。

Introduction

全国目前有 800 多个森林公园,占地面积 720 公顷。在中国有许多著名的国家森林公园,湖南省的张家界在 1982 年开始对外开放,是第一个被联合国教科文组织列入世界文化遗产的国家森林公园。那里环境保护好,而且山形奇特。娥眉山也是著名的国家森林公园。根据传说普贤菩萨曾经在此修炼过,娥眉山是四大佛教名山之一。娥眉山是闻名中外的旅游胜地,山山有奇景,十里不同天。那里藏着丰富的植物资源和完整的植被类型,保存有世界上亚热带山地最完好的原始植被景观。大约有 3 500 个物种。陕西省太白国家森林公园是秦岭山脉的最高峰,也是中国最高的森林公园,有"天然地质博物馆"之称,其完整的地理构造和各种各样的岩石。据估计中国的森林公园每年要接待 10 多万游客:这些公园对国家具有很大的社会效益和经济效益。

Discussion

- What do you think of forest areas all over the country?
 At present, there are more than 800 forest parks all over the country, covering the total area of 720 hectares.
- 2. Why is Mount-Taibai National Forest Park in Shanxi Province known as "a natural geology museum"?

Because it has its intact geo-tectonics and varied rocks.



Part One Situational Dialogue

游湖南韶山

导游: 女士们、先生们,上午好!我代表韶山旅行社,欢迎你们来到韶山—毛泽东的故居。我叫李明,是当地导游;在韶山逗留期间,我将竭力为您服务让你们快乐、 开心。

游客: 李先生, 上午好! 你可以简单介绍一下毛泽东的生平吗?

导游: 当然可以。毛泽东是中国人民的伟大领袖。在他的领导下,中国人民赶走了日本帝国主义;推翻了国民党政府;建立新中国—中华人民共和国。自此,中国人民站起来了,成为了自己的主人。

游客: 韶山如此闻名是因为毛主席,对不对?

导游: 是的。韶山是我们领袖毛主席的故乡,被列为中国四大革命圣地之一。自从新中国成立以来,韶山接待了数百万国内游客包括港、澳、台同胞,以及数十个国家政府首脑。人们不远万里专程来到这里,既可以缅怀伟大领袖波澜壮阔的一生,也可以观赏圣地韶山的秀丽风光。

游客: 在这里, 我们能参观一些什么地方。

导游: 首先, 你可以参观毛主席的故居。

游客: 你可以介绍一下他的故居吗?

导游: 毛主席的故居就依偎在青山脚下。那是一栋普通的江南农舍,单檐青瓦、结构简单。故居是他出身贫寒的见证。

游客: 故居里展出一些什么?

导游: 所有展品都展示了他当年的生活。

游客: 还可以参观一些别的吗?

导游: 你可以参观毛主席的家、滴水洞和韶山广场。

游客: 滴水洞?据说是一个神秘的地方。1966年毛主席在那里住了10天,是吗?

导游: 滴水洞实际上是一条狭长而幽深的山涧,两侧青翠的山峦紧紧侠持,谷底涓涓溪流缓缓流过,是理想的避暑胜地。



Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

黄 石 寨

女士们、先生们:

现在我们已经来到了张家界国家森林公园的中部。目前所在区域就是黄石寨,原名 黄丝寨,又名黄狮寨。黄石寨是张家界森林公园最大、最集中的观景台。沿寨而行,群 峰都在脚下,远近景观尽收眼底。所以有"不到黄石寨,枉到张家界"。游黄石寨有南北



两条步行登寨游道。让我们从南面登寨,那里有许多景点。现在,请看在右手边面对的那个山头,在一座西向而立的石壁之上,兀立一座高约20多米的圆形柱子,四周陡峭,顶端有一平台,其上有五棵青松,一块长约3米,宽1.5米,厚约80厘米的匣型石块,上面覆盖一石盖,一半盖于其上,一半悬空。传说匣里藏有黄石公的三步天书。民间传说此乃古代向王天子所弃,所以称它为天书保匣。大家再往前看。一峰矗立,拔地数百米。阴雨时谷内云翻雾涌,似波涛汹涌的大海,而此峰岿然屹立在云海中。在西南百米外有一峰酷似猴头龙宫窥视,俨然孙悟空龙宫探宝,因此,取名定海神针。现在我们一起去看南天一柱,此峰因立于南天门而得名,过南天门上行120米。上部灌木点缀,中部岩身赤裸,下部树木遮掩,峰体浑圆。一头插入云霄,一头扎入大地。不愧为大自然的杰作。现在我们来到了黄石寨的东端。看那条伸出约100米长的山梁。它的尽头有两块砂岩相叠构成一座观景台。每当浩月当空时,立于平台上,满天星斗似伸手可摘,故名摘星台。请大家跟我来,现在去看六奇阁。六奇阁高三层,以张家界山奇、水奇、云奇、石奇、树奇及珍禽异兽之奇而命名,为黄石寨最佳风景处。这次参观到此结束,希望再来游玩,再次能为你们服务。



Part Three Supplementary Readings

Natural Criteria

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. When will a natural heritage property be considered to be of outstanding universal value? A natural heritage property as defined in Article 2 of the Convention which is submitted for inclusion in the World Heritage List will be considered to be of outstanding universal value for the purposes of the Convention when the Committee finds that it meets one or more of the following criteria specified by Operational Guidelines and fulfilling the conditions of integrity set out below.
- 2. How do people evaluate universal value containing the most important and significant natural habitats for in site conservation of biological diversity?

People evaluate universal value from the point of view of science or conservation.

自然标准

当世界遗产委员会发现,某一已列写的自然遗产既能符合《世界文化与自然遗产公约》第二条之规定,又能如实满足世界遗产委员会工作守则所投标准之一条或多条,这一自然遗产即被视为具有《世界文化和自然遗产公约》所主张的"突出普遍价值"。每一入选自然遗传必须:

- 一、构成代表地球演化史中重要阶段的突出例证,或地形发展中意义重大而持续的地质进程,或意义特别重要的地貌学或自然地理说特征;
 - 二、代表进行中的重要地质过程,是陆地、淡水水域、沿海及海洋生态学及植物演

化过程以及人类与自然黄鲸相互关系的突出例证:

- 三、独特、稀有或绝妙的自然现象、地貌或具有罕见自然美的地带:
- 四、意义特别重要的保存有生物多样性的地区,尤其是从科学和生物资源保护角度看具有突出普遍价值,尚存的珍稀或频危动植物种的栖息地。



A Holy Place of Buddhism and Daoism in Hunan

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are main proverbs?
 - There are different views in five miles. There are different worlds in ten miles.
- 2. What are main scenic spots in the scenic area?
 - Main scenic spots are the four wonders of Heng Mountain.
- 3. What are the four wonders of Heng Mountain?
 - The beauty of the Sutra Palace, the depth of the Fangguang Temple, the height of Zhurong Peak and the wonder of Water Curtain Cave.
- 4. What does the Grand Temple consist of?
 - The Grand Temple consists of nine rows, four courtyards, eight Taoist monasteries and eight Buddhist temples.
- 5. What do 5 shells on July 7 th Memorial Tower represent?
 5 shells represent 5 nationalities: Han, Manchus, Mongols, Huis and Tibetan nationalities.

Part Five Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to learned guide speech.

- 1. What is the proverb on Huangshi village?
 - If you went to Zhangjiajie but didn't climb the Huangshi Village, then all the scenic spots you visited will be meaningless.
- 2. Where is the largest viewing terrace located for the Zhangjiajie National Forest Park? Yellow Lion Village.
- 3. What legends are there on Treasure Box of Celestial Books?
 - The legends say that hidden in the box are the three volumes magic books by Huangshi, Zhang Liang's master. Folks say Emperor Xiang deserted these; therefore they are called Treasure Box of Celestial Books.
- 4. Why do the people call two peaks Magic Sea Needle?
 - The two peaks complete the familiar story of Monkey King obtaining the magic sea needle as his weapon stick. So the peak is named Magic Sea Needle.



5. Why was a viewing platform named Star Picking Stand?

Because the platform seems so close to the sky that it is easy to pick the stars. So it was named Star Picking Stand in the night of bright moonlight.

II. Translate the following into English.

- 1. 长春素有"森林之城"的美称? Changchun is noted for a city of forests.
- 2. 长白山区最著名的火山口湖是美丽的天池。
 The famous Crater Lake in Changbai Mountain is Tianchi.
- 3. 天山和天池是最好的观赏地。

Heaven Mountain and Heaven Lake are the best scenes to visit.

4. 今天的西双版纳不仅是一个闻名遐迩的自然动物园,而且还享有"植物王国皇冠上的一颗明珠"的美称。

Nowadays, Xishuangbanna is not only renowned as a huge natural zoo, but has earned the name "the Pearl on the Crown of Kingdom of Plants".

5. 湖北省的神农架原始森林吸引着生态旅游者。
Shengnongjia Prime Forest in Hubei province attracts eco-travelers.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

 Wudalianchi Geopark in Heilongjiang is situated in Northeast China's Heilongjiang Province, the geopark has best-preserved volcanic scenery in China in addition to abundant mineral water springs. The Wudalianchi National Forest Park has the most complete preservation, the most typical, the latest volcanic group, and were known as "the volcano museum

五大连池国家地质公园位于中国黑龙江省的东北部,地质公园有保存最完整的火山景观,此外,有丰富的矿物水泉。五大连池是世界上保存最完整、最典型、时代最新的火山群,被誉为"中国火山博物馆"。

2. Going to the forest for holiday has already become a favorite activity of people. People in big cities for long time can not only enjoy the beauty of the nature, but also build their body and nourish their mind. Going back to the nature and back to the forest is a trend of the travel in the world today. Primitive forest is one of the best attractions. The air in forest is fresh, moreover the aroma of the woods and flowers is fascinating. Walking around in forest can make you feel very comfortable

去森林公园度假已经成为最受人们欢迎的活动。长期住在大城市的人们不仅喜欢大自然的美丽,而且更喜欢强身健体、愉悦心情。回归自然、回归森林是当今世界旅游的趋势。原始森林是最具吸引力的旅游胜地。森林中不仅空气清新,而且林子和花朵花香也很迷人。在森林里漫步使你感到特别舒适。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(T=Tourist; G=Tour Guide)

- G: We are standing before Yueyang Tower. What do you think of the tower?
- T: How magnificent! (真宏伟呀!)
- G: It is titled one of the top three towers in the South China.
- T: When was it built?
- G: It was first built in 716 in the Tang Dynasty and <u>rebuilt in 1867 in the original Tang style</u>. (在 1867 年按唐代风格重建)
- T: It is three stories. What is the height of the tower? (它有多高呢?)
- G: It is 19.72 meters high, 17.24 meters wide and 14.54 meters deep. (深 14.54 米)
- T: What was it used for?
- G: <u>It was said to train the navy</u> (据说是用来训练水军), but now it's a good place to bird-watch Dongting Lake.
- T: Now let's climb up to watch the lake.

Unit Twelve

Special Administrative Region in China

第十二单元 中国特别行政区

俗语

每逢佳节倍思亲

Introduction

特别行政区是指根据宪法规定,在中华人民共和国行政区域范围内设立的行政区区域;在这行政区域内,公民享有特殊法律地位,实行资本主义制度和资本主义生活方式。特别行政区主要用于以和平方式解决中国历史遗留下来的香港问题、澳门问题和台湾问题。特别行政区的建立构成了中国单一制的一大特色,是马克思主义国家学说在中国具体情况下的创造性运用。特别行政区的设立,有助于维持香港与澳门的繁荣和稳定。设立特别行政区在1982年宪法中有特别规定。它被设想为最终统一台湾等岛屿的模式。特别行政区不应该与经济特区混淆,经济特区是在特殊的经济规律下的应用,目的是促进贸易和投资领域的发展。

Discussion

- 1. Why did Chinese people establish special administrative region? Special administrative region of China is used for solving problems left over by history in China including Hong Kong, Macao and Taiwan. The establishment of special administrative region is helpful for Hong Kong and Macao to maintain the prosperity and stability. It was also envisioned as the model for the eventual reunification with Taiwan and other islands.
- 2. What differences are there between special administrative region and special economic zones?
 - Citizens in Special administrative regions enjoy special legal status, the capitalist system

and its way of life are carried out within the local administrative region. Special administrative regions should not be confused with special economic zones, which are the application of special economic laws to promote the development of trade and investments.



Part One Situational Dialogue

游澳门

(G=导游: T=游客)

导游: 欢迎来到澳门! 我能帮助你吗?

游客: 你能简单的介绍一下澳门吗?

导游: 澳门被称着"东方宝石"。人们也称它为东方的拉斯维加斯或者蒙地卡罗。

游客: 他们讲什么语言?

导游: 葡萄牙语和汉语是澳门的两种官方语言。

游客: 我想参观澳门,你能告诉我澳门最吸引人的地方是哪些吗?

导游: 呃,两个地方你应该去一下。

游客: 哪两个?

导游: 圣保禄教堂遗址和妈阁庙。

游客: 他们在什么位置?

导游: 圣保禄教堂遗址位于圣保禄山上。妈阁庙位于澳门半岛的西南端。

游客: 为什么他们值得参观?

导游: 圣保禄教堂遗址不仅是远东最大的天主教堂,也是远东第一所西方大学,许多西方传教士都到此研修天主教义。此外,教堂也是最著名的地面标志物。

游客: 那么妈阁庙呢?

导游: 它是澳门最古老最著名的道观之一。

游客: 这道观是什么时刻建的?

导游: 在1488年。

游客: 为什么建这个道观?

导游: 该殿是用来供奉妈祖,保护海员和渔民的女神。

游客: 我一定去参观,谢谢你。



Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

对香港旅游业的简单介绍

女士们、先生们,上午好!

我代表我们旅行社,欢迎尊贵的客人来到美丽的香港城市。我叫马良,这几天我是



你们的导游。我将尽力地帮助你们让你们开心。

香港素有"东方明珠"美称,是举世瞩目的海港城市。香港意思是"芳香的"海港。 传说在明朝, 东莞、深圳和香港生产了一种香水在江苏和浙江一带销售, 当时大多数香 水商人从香港出发,所以人们称呼这个海港为香港。香港曾经是中国广东省珠江东部港 口一个小岛的名称。目前香港包括香港岛、九龙、新界三部分。香港境域大致坐落在北 纬 22 度 09 分和北纬 22 度 34 分, 东经 113 度 50 分到 114 度 26 分之间的海面和陆地.; 全境土地面积为 1 070.12 平方公里。如今香港人口约为 650 万。

香港岛和附近小岛 79.45 平方公里在 1848 年被迫与英国签定南京条约割让给英国。 中国从1997年7月1日零时起对香港行使主权。香港岛西部小、东部大。地形从北到南 往下倾斜。香港岛最高的山峰是太平山海拔 554 米,沿着北海岸有一片狭长的低地,那 里有繁忙的街道包括上环、中环、湾仔和北角。香港岛上最高的山是太平山,海拔 554 米。香港岛面对九龙半岛,维多利亚港位于他们之间。

维多利亚海港,以其海岸线蜿蜒曲折,占地6000公顷。同时可以停泊150只大型船 只。在其最狭隘的一点是仅1.2公里宽,最宽9.6公里。大型远洋船舶进出港口的自由。 港口有 3 个出口与在里面有三个港湾, 九龙提供了一个天然屏障, 使维多利亚海港水面 平静,一年到头都不结冰。维多利亚海港条件优越,是举世闻名的深水港。维多利亚港 是在远东地区重要的海上运输枢纽。香港是与欧洲、美国、日本、东南亚、南洋、澳大 利亚,新西兰进行海上运输的唯一中转港与通道。

九龙与香港岛相反,有九座山。群山起伏就像九拢飞行,因此名字九龙。香港岛与 九龙之间的交通运输在过去依靠渡船,但是现在水下通道和地铁都开发了。新界以前北 九龙位于界限街以北和深圳河以南。在1898年6月,英国强迫清政府签订一份特殊的条 约租赁北九龙 99 年。从那时起,这个区域被称作新界。占地面积 740.6 平方公里,占总 面积的 70%。香港的 7 个新城镇、主要工厂、九广铁路、与大陆相联系的四个通道、一 个集装箱码头以及香港大学都在这里。百分之六十的香港人也住在这里。

香港作为国际金融、贸易、运输、旅游的自由港而声名远播。数十年来,旅游业一 直是香港经济的支柱。希望你们在香港留下难忘的旅游经历。谢谢你们的关注,如果你 们有任何疑问,请毫不犹豫的问我。午餐见。



$\triangleright \mathbb{P}$ art Three Supplementary Readings

Macao

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are the two special administrative regions of the People's Republic of China? Macao and Hong Kong.
- 2. What is Macao made up of?

Macao is made up of four parts: Macao peninsula, islands of Taipa and coloane and road

taipa island city.

- 3. What language do Macanese speak?
 Portuguese and Chinese are the two official languages.
- When did China recover its sovereignty over Macao?
 On December 20, 1999.
- 5. What advantage are there on Lotus Flower Flower Bridge? The bridge helps improve Macao's outward land transportation conditions and facilitate the development of Macao's inlands and Zhuhai's Hengqin Island.

澳 门

澳门是中华人民共和国两个特别行政区之一,位于中国东南沿海的珠江三角洲西侧,由澳门半岛、氹仔岛、路环岛和路氹城四部分组成,在总面积共 23.8 平方公里,在那里生活了 50 余万人,这也使澳门成为全球人口密度最高的地区。澳门北与广东省的珠海市拱北连接,西与同属珠海市的湾仔和横琴对望。东面则与另一个特别行政区——香港相距 60 公里。澳门是"世界四大赌城"之一。其著名的纺织品、玩具、旅游业、酒店和娱乐场使得澳门长盛不衰。因此,澳门也是全球最富裕的城市之一。

澳门历史城区或澳门历史古城区(旧称澳门历史建筑群),是由 22 座位于澳门半岛的建筑物和相邻的 8 块前地所组成,以旧城区为核心的历史街区。澳门历史城区在第 29 届联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会的 2005 年 7 月 15 日会议上,获得 21 个成员国全体一致通过,正式被列入《世界文化遗产名录》,为中国第 31 处世界遗产。

除了是著名的旅游景区外,澳门也有较新的深水港口。1999 年 12 月 20 日前由葡萄牙总统任命澳门总督。然而,1987 本着"一国两制"的伟大构想签署了《中葡联合声明》,规定中华人民共和国对澳门恢复行使主权时,设立中华人民共和国澳门特别行政区,澳门特别行政区直辖于中华人民共和国中央人民政府。香港、澳门作为一个自治地区将原封不动地保留其现行的社会、经济制度和生活方式。《基本法》规定:"中华人民共和国澳门特别行政区将给予高度自治的和独立的行政、立法和司法权力和终审权。"

澳门人口估计约 450 000, 其中约 95%的都是中国人, 其余为葡萄牙人和和来自其他部分的中国人, 以及来自葡萄牙和来自世界其他地方的人们。葡萄牙和汉语是两种官方语言, 粤语最普遍使用的语言。英语是澳门第三语言, 广泛用于贸易、旅游和商务。在圣保禄大教堂遗址前面的雕塑用来表达葡萄牙和中国之间的友谊。莲花代表澳门。

澳门是一个具有低税收制度的自由港口,有与珠江三角洲邻近的优势,是广东省最富有的区域。许多人都称澳门"东方之珠"。以澳门旗帜标志命名的莲花桥连接澳门氹仔岛地区与珠海横琴岛,桥在1998年6月29日开始修建,15个月后完工。这座桥有助于改善向外运输的条件和促进澳门内地与珠海横琴岛的发展。





Dragon

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. How are the figures on dragons made in China? Some are carved, some are painted or inlaid, while others are cast or molded.
- 2. What was the symbol of the Chinese empress? The mythical bird fenghuang was the symbol of the Chinese empress.
- 3. Can you describe the dragon in the Nine Dragon Screen in Beijing's Behai Park? It is 5 meters high,27 meters long and 1.2 meters thick.
- 4. How did the European dragon derive? The European dragon derived from European folk traditions and ultimately related to Greek and Middle Eastern mythologies.
- 5. What are relations there between the European dragon and the Chinese dragon? The two traditions may have evolved separately, but have influenced each other to a certain extent, particularly with the cross-cultural contact of recent centuries. Dragons are often held to have major spiritual significance in various religions and cultures around the world.



1. Background Knowledge on Dragon

龙有螣蛇没有脚而能飞(见《荀子·劝学》);有鳞的叫蛟龙,无角的叫螭(chi)龙, 有角的叫虬(qiu)(均见《离骚》洪补引《广雅》)。有翅膀的叫应龙(《天问》王注)。 蛟龙、螭龙、虬、应龙,都不是龙的正统,龙的正统叫做苍龙。元以前的龙基本是三 爪的,有时前两足为三爪,后两足为四爪。实例可参见唐、宋、元的瓷器纹饰。明代 流行四爪龙,清代则是五爪龙为多。周朝"五爪天子、四爪诸侯、三爪大夫"民间"五 爪为龙,四爪为蟒"的说法形成于清代,主要作为皇帝与下臣服装上纹饰的差别,皇 帝穿"龙袍",其它皇族和下臣穿"蟒袍",但这只是名称上的差别而已,从龙的形式 上来讲无论龙和蟒都是四足蛇类,形状无差异。

2. Classic of Mountains and Rivers 山海经

《山海经》是中国先秦古籍。主要记述古代神话、地理、物产、巫术、宗教、古史、医 药、民俗、民族等方面的内容。《山海经》不单是神话,而且是远古地理,包括了一些 海外的山川鸟兽。全书十八卷,其中"山经"五卷,"海经"八卷,"大荒经"四卷, "海内经"一卷, 共约 31 000 字。

3. Shen Nong's Materia Media 神农本草经



《神农本草经》简称《本经》,为中医四大经典著作之一,且为我国现存最早的一部中 药专著。全书共收载 365 味中药。

4. Journey to the West 西游记

《西游记》,又名《西游释厄传》,是中国古典四大名著之一,由明代小说家吴承恩编撰 而成。此书描写的是孙悟空、猪八戒、沙和尚保护唐僧西天取经、历经九九八十一难 的传奇历险故事。

◎ 译文

龙

当你进入中国文化景区,您经常会看到一些关于龙的图案。有雕刻的、有画的、有 镶嵌的还有模型铸的。这些图案经常出现在院子、铃子、祭坛、特别是在皇宫等地出现。 中国人认为龙是吉祥的象征:中国人说自己是龙的传人。龙在中国特别受欢迎, 五爪龙 是中国帝王的象征而凤凰神话鸟是中国皇后的象征。

龙的形状

在现代社会龙通常像一个巨大的蜥蜴表现出来,或象具有两对蜥蜴型腿的蛇,并能 够从他们的口中发出舌火。欧洲龙象蝙蝠,从它的后面长出翅膀。象龙但没有前腿动物 被称为一个种翼龙。发现翼龙在地面上走,虽然没有前腿,但使用翅膀作为前腿在地面 上走。欧洲龙有翅膀而中国的龙类似于大型蛇:龙可以有一个可变化的腿:没有腿、两 条腿、四条腿或更多的腿。在北京的北海公园九龙壁上的描述,龙高5米,长27米,厚 1.2。龙上的中国字可以从河南殷墟挖倔的甲古文中被发现,四种形式-原本复杂的形式和 三种简化形式,其原有的复杂形式和简化的形式看起来像一条有角的爬行动物,大嘴巴 和身体管道形式。《山海经》一书描述它有一个蛇一样的身体和人情味,生活在中山脚下。 在《神农本草经》描述成蜥蜴,象石头龙和死的蛇皮一样的龙袍。由此可以看出,想象 中的龙就像蛇或蜥蜴。

龙的种类

在中国古代书中有许多记载,"龙在四个超自然的生物(龙,龟,凤凰城和鱼)关于 头的记录,它可大可小,可长可短,春分(第四个节气)后上升到天堂,秋分(16节气) 后潜入水中。龙"是一个神圣的动物,所以另一个记录说,传说中的神仙和皇帝旅行时 或者考察时总是驾着龙,古书说,"有鳞的叫蛟龙,长着翅膀的是应龙,有角的叫虬(qiu) 龙,无角的叫螭(chi)龙。"四海龙王在古代小说《西游记》中被描述,在龙宫里面有 185 个龙王, 能启风降雨。在另一部古典小说中说:"龙能大或小;大龙可以升到云层而 小青龙入水即可消失"。

龙的含义

有两种截然不同的文化传统的龙:欧洲龙,来自欧洲的民间传统,并最终关系到希 腊和中东的神话。中国的龙与日本、韩国和其他东亚国家的同行。可能有两种传统演变, 但在一定程度上,特别是近几个世纪的跨文化对接都相互影响。龙在在世界各地的各种 宗教活动和文化活动中有重要意义。在许多亚洲文化中,龙含有恭敬的含义,是宗教和



宇宙的原始势力的代表。他们具有智慧,往往比人类更长寿、更聪明。人们普遍认为他 们拥有某种形式的魔法或其他超自然的力量,并经常与井,雨水,河流关联。在有些传 说中, 龙会人类的语言。



Part Five Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to learned guide speech.

- 1. Why did people call this seaport "Hong Kong"?
 - Hong Kong means "fragrant seaport". it is said that In the Ming Dynasty people in Dongguan, Shenzhen and Hong Kong, produced a kind of perfume that was on sale in Jiangsu and Zhejiang provinces. At that time, most perfume merchants started off from Hong Kong, so people called this seaport "Hong Kong" meaning "fragrant port".
- 2. When was "the Sino-British Nanjing Treaty" signed? In 1842, China resumed the sovereignty over Hong Kong at zero hour, July 1, 1997.
- 3. When did China resume the sovereignty over Hong Kong? At zero hour, July 1, 1997.
- 4. Why did people call the island Kowloon? Kowloon, lying opposite Hong Kong Island, has nine mountains. The mountains rise and fall just like nine flying dragons, hence named Kowloon.
- 5. What is Hong Kong reputed as? Hong Kong is reputed as an international financial, trading, shipping, tourism and free port.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. 中葡联合申明于 1987 年签署。
 - The Sino-Portuguese Joint Declaration was signed in 1987.
- 2. 中国从1997年7月1日零时起对香港恢复行使主权。
 - China resumed the sovereignty over Hong Kong at zero hour, July 1, 1997.
- 3. 香港有世界上最高的露天铜佛。
 - Hong Kong possesses the highest bronze statue of Buddha in the world.
- 4. 紫荆花是香港的象征。
 - Bauhinia is the symbol of Hong Kong.
- 5.《澳门基本法》保证澳门娱乐业在1999年以后不会改变。
 - The Macao Basic Law guarantees Macao's entertainment industry will not change after 1999.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. Travel and tourism, as a social phenomena, has existed since ancient times. According to historians on internationalized tourism the act originated in ancient Egypt more than 3 500



years ago. At that time, the Egyptian Queen visited the region of today's Somalia in high spirits.

旅行和旅游作为一种社会现象,自古以来就有。研究国际旅游的历史学家认为,旅游行为源自 3500 多年前古代埃及。当时的埃女王兴高采烈地对今天的索马里进行了参观和访问。

2. Since 1950s, the annual growth rate of tourism has been 7 percent, exceeding 3 percent of the world economic growth of the same period. In the beginning of 1990s, the world tourism revenue surpassed that of petroleum and automobile industries, ranking Number One industry in the World.

从 20 世纪 50 年代以来旅游业便以每年 7%的速度增长,远高于同期世界经济增长 3%的速度。90 年代初世界旅游总收入已经超过石油工业和汽车工业,成为世界第一大产业。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide, T=Tourists)

- G: Welcome to Hong Kong! What do you think of Hong Kong? (你认为香港怎么样?)
- T: I think that <u>Hong Kong</u> is one of the most modern, most vibrant cities in the world. (香港是世界上最现代、最具有动感的城市)
- G: I think so too. <u>Hong Kong is famous for an international finance, trading, shipping and tourism.</u> (香港以金融、贸易、运输和旅游而著名)
- T: It is said that <u>Hong Kong is one of the four major gold markets in the world</u> (香港是四大黄金市场之一). Is it right?
- G: It is right. It is just like London, New York and Zurich.
- T: How often does the plane take off at Kai Tak International Airport of Hong Kong.
- G: Every three minutes. (每三分钟一次)
- T: It is very convenient.

Unit Thirteen

Travel Abroad I 第十三单元 国外旅行(一)

俗语

人生好比旅程

Introduction

旅行能参观不同的地方、能与具有不同文化的人进行交流、能见到不同肤色的人,这是很令人兴奋的事情。越来越多的人受到旅行的诱惑离开家园去更广阔的世界。他们去旅行的原因有许多,但最普通的原因就是为了放松心情,旅行能为放松心情提供有效的方法。当你旅行归来,精力充沛,会更加努力地工作。此外,旅行也是学习的最佳方式之一。人们可以通过听和读学会一些东西。但是在实际经验中获得的知识比起从书本中获得的知识更宝贵。

Discussion

- Why is travel very exciting?
 By travel, people can visit different places and communicate with different culture and meet people with different colors and races.
- 2. Why are more and more people tempted to leave their homes to see more of the world? Perhaps the most common one is traveling for pleasure. It is an effective way to get your mind off your work. When you return, you are fresh and energetic and ready to work harder. Travel is also one of the best means for learning. One may have heard or read about something, but the knowledge obtained from actual experience is more valuable than that obtained from books.



Part One Situational Dialogue

讨论休斯顿旅行计划

(T=游客; G=导游)

导游: 女士们,先生们!我们很快就到休斯敦了。它是美国第四大城市,位于得克萨斯州东南、墨西哥湾平原的上部,距离墨西哥海湾 80 公里,海拔 49 英尺 (14.94 米)。

游客: 这个城市的经济怎样?

导游: 这个城市是西南地区的工业中心,它是美国经济增长最快的主要城市。它是石油工业中心和重要的冶炼中心。

游客: 在休斯敦要摸清道路很困难啊?

导游:确实如此。缺乏整体规划,而且它的大部分街道混搭在一起连续性小。但对于游客,事情并没有那么糟糕。大多数的主要景点离高速公路或其他主动脉不远。

游客: 您能介绍一下休斯敦高速公路的布局吗?

导游: 当然可以。了解休斯顿高速公路的布局,最好画一个蜘蛛网,其中几行从中心向 四周辐射,由两个同心圆,彼此相连。

游客: 非常感谢! 有了这些基本知识,我们就可以把握方向,从一个地方去另外一个地方?

导游: 当然可以。往休斯顿东南方向旅行可以带你去看桔子展;可以在航道上乘船游览;可以去参观德克萨斯战舰,和休斯顿太空中心奇迹。然后,可以去凯尔德游乐购物中心,或去沙滩或去欣赏加尔维斯顿穆迪花园。

游客: 听起来很不错。但是我想参观博物馆。

导游:往南部方向可以带你参观一些博物馆,包括儿童博物馆、休斯顿自然科学博物馆、健康与医学科学博物馆等。当然,还可以去参观休斯顿动物园,里面有个专门的儿童动物园,可以探讨德克萨斯州不同生态区。往北有一个水上公园,往西南方向是乔治牧场历史公园,是休斯敦最能体验牛仔文化的牧场。

游客: 哦,太好了!感谢您提供的信息。

导游: 不客气。明天早上7点钟在一楼大厅等你们。



\gg \mathbb{P} art Two $\;$ A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

黄石国家公园

女士们、先生们,欢迎你们来到黄石国家公园!

在美国,有许多著名的自然风景区以及许多著名的旅游胜地。黄石国家公园就是其中之一。它是一个横跨怀俄明、蒙达拿、爱达荷三个州的国家公园,其中大部分区域在



怀俄明的西北部。它是世界上最古老的国家公园也是美国最大的禁猎区,占地面积 3 472 平方英里,包括湖泊、峡谷、河流和山脉;此外,公园以许多地热奇观而著名;特别是老忠实间歇泉是公园中最受欢迎的区域。

黄石国家公园有数千个温泉和 200 多处间歇泉。大多数来访者最感兴趣的就是间歇泉和温泉。这些主要与这块区域近来的火山活动有关。当来自地表的水遇到几百英尺深的热岩石并且被加热后,水就可能转变成水蒸汽。产生的水蒸汽回到地表,引起一种不寻常的热现象,这样间歇泉和温泉就可能出现。许多温泉呈现各种各样的颜色,或许温度对颜色有影响。老忠实是最著名的间歇泉,喷发的高度在空中超过 100 英尺,每 73 分钟喷发一次。

在公园里有各种各样的野生动植物。如:野牛、驼鹿、骡子、熊、糜、郊狼、塘鹅、水牛等。许多人都说在黄石国家公园看见野生的狼是一种终生难忘的体验,狼现在已经成了黄石国家公园的招牌动物。水牛是黄石公园著名的动物;在 20 世纪初期,由于平原猎人的捕杀,水牛接近灭种。黄石公园是唯一能看到水牛闲逛的地方,也是水牛唯一受到保护并避免猎人捕杀的地方。在春天,还有许多的鸟迁移到这里生活和繁殖。广阔的森林和草地中也包含了奇异的植物种类。

黄石国家森林公园内的另一景观是黄石河,它由黄石峡谷汹涌而出,贯穿整个黄石公园到达蒙大拿州境内。黄石河将山脉切穿而创造了神奇的黄石大峡谷。在阳光下,两峡壁的颜色从橙黄过渡到橘红,仿佛是两条曲折的彩带。由于公园地势高,黄石河及其支流深深地切入峡谷,形成许多激瀑布,蔚为壮观。

在黄石公园有许多娱乐的机会,可以徒步旅行、扎营、划船、钓鱼和观看风景。铺平的路为访问地热区以及参观湖泊和瀑布的游客提供了行走的捷径。在冬季,游客按照导游的方法通过使用雪地汽车或雪橇进入公园。黄石湖是钓鱼者的乐园。那里钓鱼非常流行。常常可以捕到鳟鱼,而且可能捕到河鳟。但是不允许打猎。

黄石国家公园是美国第一个国家公园,每年的 5 月到 9 月都是黄石国家公园旅游的高峰期。现在正值高峰期,我真诚希望你们在这里玩得愉快,我也会尽力的帮助你们排忧解难。



Part Three Supplementary Readings

Chinese Outbound Market

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Why have outbound trips grown by an annual average of 22% since 2000?

 Thanks to rising disposable incomes and relaxations of restrictions on foreign travel, outbound trips grew by an annual average of 22% since 2000.
- 2. When will China become the fourth largest market in the world?
- 3. Why are Chinese Hong Kong's highest spending visitors?



Because over half the expenditure goes on shopping.

- 4. Why is Australia seen as the most desirable holiday destination? It can provide an excellent alternative of relaxation all year round.
- 5. Why was Canada the most shining star on China outbound market? Because the Memorandum of Understanding on Facilitation of Chinese Outbound Tourist Groups to Canada between China National Tourism Administration (CNTA) and Ministry of Foreign Affairs and International Trade of Canada was signed on June 24.

中国出境市场

中国是世界上增长最快的出境旅游市场之一。由于国外旅行限制的放宽,自 2000 年以来的年均支配收入上升增长了 22%,在 2002 年超过日本。在 2004 年出国游人数达到近 28.5 万人次,在 2006 年达到近 35 万人次。2007 年中国出国游消费 30 亿美元,中国在全世界排名第五。在 1995 年,世界旅游组织预测,中国将产生 100 万人次,到 2020年,中国将成为世界第四大市场。鉴于近期的发展趋势,在 2020 年之前将达到这一目标。

香港能提供了一些难忘的旅游景点如维多利亚港和最受人敬畏的大佛等。具有各种价格范围的产品和品牌,香港能给你独特的购物体验。具有五光十色的商场、时髦的街头市场、中国传统产品的商店和主题购物区、时尚精品店,你可以找到一切从最新的设计师时装和电子产品到价值合理的古董和收藏品。根据香港旅游发展局(旅发局)收集到的数据,这些个体游客不只是来访的朋友和亲戚,或零星资金预算性质的旅游。事实上,中国是香港的最高支出客源;游客一半以上支出在购物上,明显多于其他旅游目的地。

澳大利亚人非常友好和乐于助人,很有幽默感并有讲笑话的天赋。去澳大利亚的海滩度周末是一个非常受欢迎的运动,和去商场或做其他运动一样多。澳大利亚人生活的大海、沙滩成为扩展的后院。大部分澳大利亚一年四季阳光充沛,这提供了一个很好的放松选择。根据澳大利亚旅游局的调查,澳大利亚被看作是最理想的度假胜地,尤其是对北京和上海的旅客。北京 32%的旅客说,他们正在考虑去澳大利亚旅行,比去法国(占27%)和美国(占21%)的还要多。在上海去澳大利亚的人数从 2000 年的 19%增加到 2003年到的 28%,位居第五。

加拿大成为中国出境游市场最大亮点。2010年6月24日,中加两国正式签署了《中华人民共和国国家旅游局和加拿大外交与国际贸易部关于便利中国旅游团队赴加拿大旅游的谅解备忘录》。为巩固落实成果,推动中国公民赴加拿大旅游的有序开展,国家旅游局在2010年8月18日分别在北京、上海和广东三地组织共计380人成为中国旅游团队赴加拿大旅游首发团。加拿大正在成为一个全球性的生态旅游和探险旅游目的地。该国成为寻求真实的旷野,探险和文化经验的国际旅客的自然画卷。加拿大有其丰富的原始荒野资源,可以作为未受污染的度假胜地和多种野生动植物生存的典型代表。





Melting Pot in America

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What is the metaphor of "melting pot" used for during the 18th and 19th century? During the 18th and 19th century, the metaphor of "melting pot" was used to describe the fusion of different nationalities, ethnicities and cultures.
- 2. What does the "melting pot" mean? The melting pot means that the different elements "melting together" into a harmonious whole forming a common culture.
- 3. Why did people put forward "melting pot" in America? The American is a new nation, who acts upon new principles, so they think they should entertain new ideas and form new opinions.
- 4. How should we understand the "melting pot" in America? Americans of various backgrounds should abandon the customs and the languages of the "old country" and be absorbed into American life.
- 5. What changes are there about "melting pot" in American people? Many of today's descendants of immigrants respect the cultures they had once rejected. Furthermore, they believe that the United States, a land of immigrants, would benefit by retaining aspects of its many cultural backgrounds.



1. Melting Pot 大熔炉

"大熔炉"是指美国可以融合世界各种不同的文化为美国文化,众所皆知美国是移民国 家,美国的移民来自世界的各个角落。有欧洲的、南美的、非洲、亚洲的等等。每个 移民族群都有自己的文化,但美国社会不排斥这些文化,不同的文化在美国开放、民 主、法制的国家里融合,形成多元的美国文化。就像一个大熔炉似的把不同文化融合 在一起,而非单一的英国殖民地文化,所以说美国是个大熔炉。

2. metaphor. 隐喻

隐喻是和明喻不同,不用 like 或 as 表示出来,而是进行隐藏的比较的这样一种修辞手 段。隐喻又称暗喻。表达方法: A 是 B。隐喻是一种比喻,用一种事物暗喻另一种事 物。20 时世纪 70 年代以后隐喻研究呈现出了一种多角度、多层次和多学科的多元化 态势。认知科学家认为,隐喻是人类认知事物的基本方式;它不仅仅是一种语言现象, 更重要的是一种人类的认知现象,是人类将其某一领域的经验用来说明或理解另一类 领域经验的认知活动。

3. "Little Italy"、"Little Poland"、"Chinatown"小意大利、小波兰、唐人街"小意大利"、"小波兰"顾名思义,指的就是意大利、波兰的缩影。主要是许多意大利人在其他国家城市地区聚集的地方或者波兰人在其他国家城市地区聚集的地方。"唐人街"也被称为华埠或中国城是华人在其他国家城市地区聚居的地区。唐人街的形成,是因为早期华人移居海外,成为当地的少数族群,在面对新环境需要同舟共济,便群居在一个地带,故此多数唐人街是华侨历史的一种见证。唐人街最早叫"大唐街"。

美国的大熔炉

在 18 世纪和 19 世纪期间,"大熔炉"这种使用隐喻表达语言含义的方法被用来描述 不同民族、种族和文化的融合。"大熔炉"意思是把不同民族的文化融合成一个和谐的整 体形成一种新的民族文化。

美国人是一个新形成的民族,他们有新的做事准则,也就必须接受新思想,有自己的新主张。因此,"大熔炉"特别用来描述美国移民思维意识的同化。人们认为美国应该起到一个大熔炉的作用,把文化背景各异的人融合为一个统一的整体这被认为是国家的希望。也就是说,不同背景的美国人应该放弃原有国家的习俗和语言,同时,又把这些习俗和语言融入美国式的生活中去获得新的发展。这种思想在发展的初期是成功的。最初的移民有类似的生活背景,他们主要来自北欧。后来,由于身处辽阔荒野而产生的孤独及面临的巨大艰难和危险,这些西部拓荒者开始同周围的各民族交往,差异日趋缩小。然而,在19世纪后期移民主要来自东欧和南欧,这种思想难以达到预期的效果。对于新的移民来说,因为他们的文化和语言与已经扎根的美国人的文化和语言之间的重大差异同化变得更为困难。所以这些移民从自己的祖籍的移民中寻找其他的共存方式,他们聚齐在一起形成紧密结合的社团。不久,许多城市就有了这种民族社区"小意大利"、"小波兰"和"唐人街"等。

这些移民中的孩子通过模仿美国本地出身的校友学到了许多东西。他们避免父母和祖父的语言和习俗。甚至他们为非美国人的习俗和自己支离破碎的英语而感到害羞。这样导致了家庭关系的不快和自卑的感觉。现在对这种过去经历的态度改变很大。来自不同国家的人们对外国人的过去很感兴趣,为他们自己的文化遗产而感到自豪。有专门的学科研究民族语言与生活,出版儿童书籍就是为了使他们了解自己的民族历史,他们祖先本国的节日包括民间节日公开庆贺,中国人的新年春节经常在纽约和旧金山庆贺,今天许多移民的子孙尊重曾经拒绝的文化。此外,他们认为作为移民的国度的美国将从保留的众多文化背景中受益。



$ightarrow \mathbb{P}$ art Five $\,\,$ Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to guide speech.

- 1. How many hot springs and geysers does the Yellowstone National Park have?

 The Yellowstone National Park has thousands of hot springs and over 200 geysers.
- 2. What are most visitors interested in?



Most visitors are interested in the geysers and hot springs.

- Why is the most famous geyser in the park called the Old Faithful?
 Because the Old Faithful is always erupting more than 100 feet in the air about every 73 minutes
- 4. What animals are there in the Yellowstone National Park?

 A wide variety of wildlife live in the Park including bison, mule deer, bears, moose, coyotes, pelicans, elks, buffalos, etc.
- 5. Why have the Yellowstone River and its tributaries cut deeply into the canyon, forming many falls?

Because the Yellowstone National Park is higher.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 我想游览日内瓦所有的名胜。

I want to see all places of renown in Geneva.

- 2. 如果我们坐船旅行,我们可以欣赏塞纳河沿岸的动人景色。 If we take a boat trip, we can enjoy the magnificent sights along the Seine.
- 3. 我下个月将到开罗作一次旅行。

I'm going on a trip to Cairo next month.

4. 我的方向感很差,我就跟你走吧。

I've got a poor sense of direction, so I'll just follow you.

5. 你出国是带现金还是旅行支票?

Which one would you take when going abroad, cash or traveler's checks?

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. Yellowstone National Park is the oldest and one of the largest national parks in the United States. It is named after the Yellowstone River that flows through the area. It is known for its geysers and hot springs among other natural wonders.

黄石国家森林公园是最大、最著名、建立最早的国家公园,以流经其中的黄石河而命名;以其自然景观中的间歇泉和温泉而著名。

2. The Grand Canyon National Park is America's most famous scenic wonder. It is a huge gorge slowly carved away for nearly 6 million years by the waters of the Colorado River. The canyon is so deep that there are 4 distinctive zones of climate from top to bottom. Located in Arizona, it attracts over millions of visitors from all over the world each year. The national Park was established in 1908.

大峡谷国家公园是美国最著名的风景奇迹。科罗拉多河将近 600 万年长年累月的冲蚀 而形成的巨大峡谷。峡谷是如此之深从上到下峡谷中有四种独特的区域气候。峡谷 位于美国亚利桑那州,它每年吸引了成千上万的来自世界各地的游客。此公园 1908 年建立。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- T: <u>In addition to Christmas and Thanksgiving Day</u> (除了圣诞节和感恩节), can you tell us the names of the other principal holidays celebrated in the United States, Helen?
- G: The other principal holidays are New Year's Day, Presidents' Day, Labor Day and the Fourth of July and etc.
- T: New Year's Day is also celebrated universally as a national holiday. What is Presidents' Day and why do you celebrate it? (总统诞生纪念日是哪一天,为什么你们庆贺?)
- G: In February there are birthday celebrations for two former presidents, Abraham Lincoln on the 12th and George Washington on the 22nd. The government established Presidents'

 <u>Day to pay homage to all previous American presidents.</u> (政府确定总统诞生纪念日是为了表示对前任美国总统的敬意)
- T: Oh, I see. Can you tell something about Labor Day?
- G: <u>Labor Day is celebrated on the first Monday of September.</u> (美国劳动节在 9 月的第一个星期一庆贺)
- T: Why do you celebrate the Fourth of July?
- G: The Fourth of July is Independence Day It was on July 4, 1776 that the Declaration of Independence was signed (独立宣言是在 1776 年 7 月 4 日签订的), proclaiming the independence from England of the thirteen original colonies which later became the United States of America.



1. Christmas Day 圣诞节

圣诞节每年 12 月 25 日,是教会年历的一个传统节日,它是基督徒庆祝耶稣基督诞生的庆祝日,在圣诞节,大部分的天主教教堂都会先在 12 月 24 日的耶诞夜,亦即 12 月 25 日凌晨举行子夜弥撒,而一些基督教会则会举行报佳音,然后在 12 月 25 日庆祝圣诞节。而基督教的另一大分支——东正教的圣诞节庆祝则在每年的 1 月 7 日。

2. Thanksgiving Day 感恩节

感恩节(Thanksgiving Day)是美国和加拿大共有的节日,时间为每年 11 月的第四个星期四。是一个仅次于圣诞节的重要节日。原意是为了感谢上天赐与的好收成。美国家庭都要举行丰盛的感恩宴,常见的传统食品有火鸡、南瓜馅饼和玉米面做的印第安布丁。

- 3. Presidents' Day 总统诞生纪念日 林肯(Abraham Lincoln)总统纪念日二月十二日;华盛顿总统纪念日二月二十二日。
- 4. Labor Day 美国劳动节
 - "五一国际劳动节"源于美国,但美国人却把自己的劳动节定在九月第一个星期一。在 美国,劳动节约定俗成地成为夏天结束,秋天到来的象征,所以是旅游的好季节。



5. The Fourth of July 美国国庆节

美国国庆节,美国国庆节的正规叫法是"独立纪念日",它是美国的主要法定节日之一, 日期为7月4日,以纪念1776年7月4日大陆会议通过《独立宣言》。

6. Declaration of Independence 《独立宣言》

《独立宣言》由托马斯·杰佛逊起草,1776年7月4日由大陆会议主席约翰·汉寇克 签字生效。《独立宣言》提出了一切人生而平等,具有追求幸福与自由的天赋权利,政 府的权力来自人民: 历数了英国对北美 13 州进行殖民统治的罪行: 最后庄严宣告美利 坚合众国脱离英国而独立。它标志着英国在北美的殖民地和英国正式分家,走向独立 建国的道路。

Unit Fourteen

Travel Abroad II 第十四单元 国外旅行(二)

俗语

入乡随俗

Introduction

旅行能拓宽人的视野。一旦你很乐意与其他国家的人交往,你外来的思想和决定就会在某些方面受到他们行为、对人们的印象以及你参观的国家的影响,无论你多么的有教养,你会在你的旅行中学到很多知识。有许多较为节省的旅行方式。你可以乘公共汽车、乘小船、甚至乘自行车,花比较少的钱,却需要更长的时间。你可以乘飞机旅行,但比较贵,但很快。普通的方式是人们乘火车旅行。无论选择那种交通方式。既要考虑它的好处又要考虑他的弊端。

Discussion

- 1. How can travel enlarge a person's perspective?
 - Once you have had the pleasure of meeting people of other countries, your thoughts and decisions in the future will be affected, in some way, by them and the impressions of the people and nations you have visited. No matter how well educated you may be, you will learn a lot during yours travels.
- 2. What way is there to travel in a less costly fashion?

 You may take buses, small boats, or even ride a bicycle, which will cost less money but a longer time. You may fly by plane, which is quite expensive, but fast. Most commonly, people travel by train.



Part One Situational Dialogue

去博物馆的旅行计划

导游: 早上好! 我能帮你吗?

游客: 早上好!我想对文化景区进行一次旅游。我知道伦敦是世界上最古老的城市之一。 你能给我提供一些建议吗?

导游: 当然可以。我们以我们这里灿烂的文化而自豪。如果你对历史感兴趣,你最好先参观博物馆。博物馆有许多历史文物。你最好去大英博物馆。

游客: 我对这个博物馆稍有了解,但我要理解博物馆里面具体的文物较难。

导游: 别担心! 博物馆的讲解员会帮助你的。

游客: 我能从博物馆里了解到什么?

导游: 你可以看到从全国各地收集到的从史前到现代的人类杰作。著名的作品有罗塞塔石碑、帕台农神庙和波特兰花瓶。

游客: 听起来很有兴趣, 还有别的博物馆吗?

导游: 如果您想了解动植物和历史的演变,我建议你去参观自然历史博物馆。

游客: 对不起,我对您的建议难以理解。在历史博物馆怎么能看到动物呢?

导游:实际上,它是一个自然历史博物馆,是大英博物馆的一部分。他对世界上最大、 最高、最稀少的动物都有收集。

游客: 什么动物标本最值得观赏?

导游: 别错过了鲸的原尺寸模型和 4 千万年的蜘蛛标本。

游客: 太好了,非常感谢!

导游: 不客气。



Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourist Site

女士们、先生们,欢迎来到伦敦!

伦敦是英国的首都,位于英格兰东南部的平原上,跨泰晤士河,距离泰晤士河入海口 88 公里。伦敦的行政区划分为伦敦城和 32 个市区,伦敦城外的 12 个市区称为内伦敦,其它 20 个市区称为外伦敦。伦敦城、内伦敦、外伦敦构成大伦敦市。大伦敦市又可分为伦敦城、西伦敦、东伦敦、南区和港口。伦敦城是金融资本和贸易中心,西伦敦是英国王宫、首相官邸、议会和政府各部所在地,东伦敦是工业区和工人住宅区,南区是工商业和住宅混合区,港口指伦敦塔桥至泰晤士河河口之间的地区。

今天,我们想参观一些极其著名的地标、重要的皇家景点、具有政治色彩的景点等。明天我们将参观这个城市的一些古迹、财政区域和这个城市著名的地标。现在我们去滑铁卢车站因为那里靠近这些景区。

现在我们已经到达滑铁卢车站了。我们将从车站出发,顺着往河边的这个方向走。



现在我们能看到的是皇家节日大厅。请往左边方向走,再向前面看。那是伦敦眼。你们 知道伦敦眼是用于做什么的?伦敦眼是世界上最大和最高的观景轮,转一圈大约要花 30 分钟时间。今天很幸运,排队的人不多,值得参观。大家注意,快速绕过伦敦水族馆就 会到达威斯敏斯特大桥。这里自称是城市最好的观景点。看,跳过水面看大本钟,非常 壮观。让我们继续往前走。威斯敏斯特教堂离这不远了。经过钟楼就会到达议会广场和 议会大厦。请跟我来,再穿过这个广场就到了威斯敏斯特教堂。你们知道威斯敏斯特教 堂为什么这么著名吗?它是伦敦声名远播的宗教大楼——加冕礼的设置,正式的葬礼, 著名国王、王后埋葬的的地方。现在让我们往东北方向走,去圣·詹姆斯公园。往右手边 走就会通向唐宁街的末端。然后往南方向绕过这个湖,横过中间的这座桥。这里将看到 最美丽的风景。看,你们猜这是艺术画廊还是博物馆啊?实际上,这既不是艺术画廊也 不是博物馆。这是白金汉宫。自1837年以来,英国女皇的官邸,现在是英国最高统治者 行政总部。一般来说,需要提前预订门票。每年有5万人作为贵宾赴宴、进午餐、晚餐 和参加皇家园林晚会。今天很走运,我已经为每个人都买到了票。现在,我带你们去参 观这个宫殿。如果你想拍照吗,沿着圣 詹姆斯宫走过去。你可以拍一些卫士的照片。让 我们横过皮卡迪利大街,你可以现场购物。往东方向走就可以到达皮卡迪利广场-并且在 厄洛斯前面可以拍一些照片。在你们横过亨格福德大桥之前,我真心推荐你花些时间参 观国家艺术画廊,这里欧洲名画收藏量最大。收藏了1250年到1900年所有的精品,包 括波提切利尼、达•芬奇、伦勃朗、庚斯博罗、特纳、塞尚、凡•高等著名画家的作品。 如果你们想参观,我将在这里等待40分钟!

现在是我们离开这里的时间了。明天我们将参观这个城市的一些古迹、财政区域和 这个城市著名的地标。请作好准备。谢谢你们的合作。明天见!



Part Three Supplementary Readings

Westminster

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Where is the largest gothic edifice located in England? Westminster Palace is the seat of the largest Gothic edifice in England.
- 2. What is Westminster Palace bounded by on the east? At the northern end rises the Clock Tower
- 3. How many rooms and kilometers of halls are there in Westminster Palace? Inside the palace, there are 1000 rooms, and 4 kilometers of halls.
- 4. Which tower in Westminster was considered the highest and largest in the world? Victoria Tower.
- 5. Where were many of the country's greatest literary and scientific figures buried? Westminster Abbey.





1. Gothic edifice 歌特式建筑

歌特式是欧洲中世纪的主要建筑风格。与罗马式建筑造型稳重,线条圆浑相反,歌特式建筑以动势取胜,统贯全身、直刺苍穹的垂直线条,锋利的尖顶是其主要特征,是超凡入圣的宗教情绪的集中体现。

2. Westminster Palace 威斯敏斯特宫

威斯敏斯特宫(Palace of Westminster),又称国会大厦(Houses of Parliament)是英国国会(包括上议院和下议院)的所在地。威斯敏斯特宫是哥特复兴式建筑的代表作之一,1987年被列为世界文化遗产。该建筑包括约 1 100 个独立房间、100 座楼梯和 4.8 公里长的走廊。尽管今天的宫殿基本上由 19 世纪重修而来,但依然保留了初建时的许多历史遗迹,如威斯敏斯特厅(可追溯至 1097 年),今天用作重大的公共庆典仪式,如国葬前的陈列等。

3. Westminster Abbev 西敏寺

西敏寺英国最著名的教堂。西敏寺不是简单的宗教场所。作为大英帝国的国家教堂,几百年来它既是英国历代帝王的加冕之地,更是这些帝王和古圣先贤的埋葬之所。有资格葬身于此的人非贵即贤,即使不是王公贵族,有杰出贡献者也能在这里与王公贵族比肩,因此英国人应该以能死后进入西敏寺为荣。教堂内有著名的"诗人之角(Poet's Corner)",有许多文人伟人的纪念碑与纪念文物,如莎士比亚、狄更斯等人,也有许多纪念文物在此展出。

4. Whitehall 白厅

白厅是英国伦敦市内的一条街。它连接议会大厦和唐宁街。在这条街及其附近有国防部、外交部、内政部、海军部等一些英国政府机关设在这里。因此人们用白厅作为英国行政部门的代称。

5. The House of Lords and the House of Commons 上议院和下议院

上议院和下议院是资本主义国家两院制议会的组成部分。两议院除有相同的立法和监督政府等权利之外,各自有一些区别,上议院任期比较长,英国甚至是世袭制;下议院议员是按人口比例由选民选举产生,定期改选。

威斯敏斯特

威斯敏斯特是伦敦最美丽的一个部分。威斯敏斯特宫是英国议会所在地,那里有英国最大的歌特式建筑群,占地八英亩,位于伦敦的中心。白厅末端的议会广场在东部与威斯敏斯特宫搭界,南部是西敏寺大教堂。

英国国王塞贝特七世纪时在泰晤士河附近的威斯敏斯特建立了第一个宫殿和教堂。 威廉征服者对它们做了多次修补,威廉的儿子建了一间新厅。当时在欧洲是最大最美的。 从 1066 年征服者威廉以来,西敏寺大教堂一直是英国国王加冕的地方。所有英国的国王 都一直住在这个宫殿直到 16 世纪。当亨利八世迁到白厅的一个新宫时,上议院和下议院



才在宫殿会合。1834年,除了威斯敏斯特厅之外,其余的宫殿都被烧掉了。

现在威斯敏斯特新宫非常的美。新宫的门和窗户看起来都像十六世纪的宫殿,右面是泰晤士河。宫殿内部,有一千套房间,四公里长的大厅。其中最重要的房间就是上议院和下议院。这宫殿有数百个小塔。在南面有 102 米(336 英尺)高的维多利亚塔,这个塔被认为是当时世界上最高最大的塔。在北端矗立着一栋钟楼,钟楼上有一个 13 吨的,高 96 米(316 英尺)的著名的"大本钟",大本钟以本杰明霍尔的名字命名,他在 1859年主持建造了该钟。人们认为大本钟是伦敦的标志。议会的外面矗立着温斯顿·邱吉尔的雕塑,在第二次世界大战中曾为英国的首相。

西敏寺真正是这个国家的一块神圣之地,许多伟大的科学家、文学家埋葬在那里,许多英国的国王也埋葬在那里。所以,这个教堂铭记了许多传统,纪念英国人们所取得的许多成就。



Culture on Europe and America

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- What did European and American culture inherit from?
 European and American culture inherited from the Greco-Roman, Christian and Renascence.
- 2. How did Greek culture merge with Roman culture?
 - After the Roman Empire conquered Ancient Greece, the Romans adopted the Greek cultural structures and developed their achievements. The two cultures merged so completely that later generations named them the Ancient Greco-Roman culture.
- 3. When was Christianity born? When did Christianity flourish?

 Christianity was born in the first century but flourish in the Middle Ages(5 th century—13 th Century).
- 4. How did religion influence culture?
 - At that time, everything followed the sake of religion, human needs were restricted to very basic levels until the Enlightenment of the Renaissance broke through the religious restriction.
- 5. What shows the enchantment of the traditional cultures fully?
 - All these old and new cultural factors including city designs and countless architectural styles, the techniques of sculpture and painting, the delicate nuances and grandeur of music, the elegance and profound depth of literature; the seriousness, practicality and innovation of science seem to have the same creative spirit driving them—the spirit seeking truth and beauty.

欧美文化

欧美国家历史文化资源丰富。古建筑和仿古建筑、绘画、雕塑、音乐、文学形象都深刻反映出深厚的古希腊罗马和基督教传统。欧美文化主要有两个渊源,一个是古希腊罗马文化,另一个是基督教文化。

希腊人几乎在一切领域的研究都达到了人类业绩的顶峰,如:哲学、科学、文学、有记载的历史、建筑、雕塑等。文学的最高成就就是《荷马史诗》。而他们的科学探索方法为整个现代科学研究奠定了基础,亚里士多德的应用理性进行推理的方法就是一例。罗马帝国征服了古希腊以后,罗马文化与希腊文化日益融合,后人称他们为古希腊罗马文化。古希腊罗马时期的文化艺术主要沉淀于留存下来的古建筑、雕塑绘画、文学和一些科学典籍中,后来,在西方历史上经常采纳和传承。

基督教产生于一世纪,在中世纪(5—13世纪)兴旺昌盛。当时的欧洲一切都服从宗教的需要。人类的需求被限制到最低的程度。但科学研究却遵守古希腊取得的重大成就。14-16世纪的文艺复兴运动,冲破了中世纪的神学禁锢。文艺复兴开始,欧洲各国有了相当的发展,纷纷展出自己的个性,艺术文化乃至国民气质都有了各自的特征。近年来流行的新古典主义,将传统元素引用到服装、装饰、电影乃至生活方式。

自所有这些古代与现代欧美文化因素从城市格局到建筑形式、雕塑绘画的喻意与技巧、音乐的精致与宏大、文学的优美与深刻、科学的严谨求实与进取似乎都有一种追求 真理与美的创造精神在支撑。这些都充分显示了传统文化的魅力。



ightharpoonupart Five Consolidation

A. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. Where is London located?
 - London is located in the southeastern plains of England, across the River Thames, 88 km from the River Thames estuary.
- 2. What is the Greater London made up of?
 - The Greater London is made up of city of London, inner London, outer London.
- 3. Why are they going to the Waterloo station at first?
 - Because it is closer to the sights.
- 4. What is the London Eye used for?
 - The London Eye is the largest and the highest observation wheel in the world, taking about 30 minutes to revolve.
- 5. What has Buckingham Palace served as?
 - It has served as the official London residence of Britain's sovereigns since 1837 and today is the administrative headquarters of the Monarch.



B. Ask students turn the Guide Speech into a dialogue including relating contents.

A Travel in London

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- T: I'd like to visit the famous spots in London. Can you tell me what they are?
- G: Well, the British Museum, Buckingham Palace, the Houses of Parliament, Big Ben, Royal Opera House, St. Paul's Cathedral, Royal Exchange, The Tower of London and Tower Bridge are all good points of interest in the city.
- T: Oh, I can't wait to go, but I have only two days, so do you think I can visit all of those places?
- G: No, you can't if you want to take a good look at them instead of just having a quick glance.
- T: That's too bad. But I still can choose a few of them. Then what's the best way to do my sightseeing?
- G: If you want to see some landmarks, important royal sites, important political sites, etc., it's best to arrive into Waterloo station—It is closer to the sights.
- T: OK. Can you guide me?
- G: Of course. Now we have arrived at the station. We will go out from the station, follow the directions to the river. Now what we can see is the Royal Festival Hall. Please head left, and then look forward. That is the London Eye.
- T: What is the London Eye used for?
- G: The London Eye is the largest observation wheel in the world, taking about 30 minutes to revolve. It is lucky that the queues aren't too long. It is well worth the wait.
- T: Can you tell me how I can see Big Ben?
- G: Yes. A quick stroll past the London Aquarium will take us onto Westminster Bridge. This boasts one of the best views in the city—Big Ben across the river.
- T: How far is Westminster Abbey?
- G: It is not far. A stroll past the clock tower will take us to Parliament Square and the Houses of Parliament. Please follow me and walk across the square to Westminster Abbey.
- T: Why is Westminster Abbey very famous?
- G: It is London's most prestigious religious building—the setting for coronations, state funerals, and the burial place of many celebrated kings and queens. Let's go along northeast direction
- T: Where will we go?
- G: We'll go towards St. James's Park. A stroll up the right and side will lead to the backend of Downing Street. Now let us skirt the south side of the lake and cross the bridge in the middle. Here will be one of the most celebrated views.
- T: Look! Is this an art gallery or a museum?
- G: It is not an art gallery and nor is it a museum. This is Buckingham Palace. It has served as the official London residence of Britain's sovereigns since 1837 and today is the

administrative headquarters of the Monarch.

- T: May we visit it?
- G: Yes. Generally speaking, tickets should be made a reservation ahead. More than 50 000 people visit the Palace each year as guests to banquets, lunches, dinners, receptions and the Royal Garden Parties.
- T: May I take photos here?
- G: Walk down the Mall past St. James's Palace. You can take some photos of the guards there. Let us head across Green Park to Piccadilly, where you can do a spot of shopping. Walk east towards Piccadilly Circus—and take your photo in front of Eros.
- T: What's activity there today?
- G: I heartily recommend that you spend some time exploring the National Gallery before heading east across Hungerford Bridge to Waterloo. I will wait for you 40 minutes here.
- G: Now it is time to leave here. What do you think of London?
- T: It's very beautiful. Can you make an arrangement for us tomorrow?
- G: Yes. We are going to visit the ancient heart of the city, the financial district and some of the city's greatest landmarks.
- T: OK. We're entirely on your hands. You'll have to be our guide again.
- G: It's my pleasure. Thank you for your cooperation today. See you tomorrow!

伦敦一游

(G=导游, T=游客)

游客: 我想游览伦敦的名胜, 你能告诉我有哪些吗?

导游: 嗯,大英博物馆、白金汉宫、国会大厦、大本钟、牛津街、皇家歌剧院、圣保罗 大教堂、皇家交易所、伦敦塔和塔桥等都是观光胜地。

游客: 啊,我想去,可我只能在这里玩两天时间,你认为我可以游览完所有这些地方吗?

导游: 如果你想好好游览而不是走马观花的话,那两天时间是不行的。

游客: 太可惜了,不过我还是可以选些地方去游览的,那我最好怎样游览呢?

导游: 如果你想看有一些地标,重要的皇家景点,重要的具有政治色彩的景点。最好的方法是去滑铁卢车站靠近这些景点。

游客: 好的,你能为我做向导吗?

导游: 当然可以。现在我们已经到达了车站。我们将从车站出发,顺着往河边的这个方向走。现在我们能看到的是皇家节日大厅。请往左边方向走,再向前面看。那是 伦敦眼。

游客: 伦敦眼是用于做什么的?

导游: 伦敦眼是世界上最大的观景轮,旋转一周大约要花 30 分钟时间。如果幸运,排队的人不多,值得参观。

游客: 你能告诉我怎样观看大本钟吗?

导游: 可以。快速绕过伦敦水族馆就会到达威斯敏斯特大桥。这里自称是城市最好的观



景点-水上大本钟。

游客: 威斯敏斯特教堂离这里有多远?

导游: 不远。经过钟楼就会到达议会广场和议会大厦。请跟我来,再横过这个广场就到 了威斯敏斯特教堂。

游客: 威斯敏斯特教堂为什么这么著名?

导游: 这是伦敦声名远播的宗教大楼一加冕礼的设置,正式的葬礼,著名国王、王后埋 葬的地方。让我们往东北方向走。

游客: 我们去哪里?

导游: 我们去圣•詹姆斯公园。往右手边走就会通向唐宁街的末端。现在让我们往南方 向绕过这个湖,再横过中间的这座桥。就可以看到最美丽的风景。

游客: 看, 这是艺术画廊还是博物馆啊?

导游: 这既不是艺术画廊也不是博物馆。这是白金汉宫。自1837年以来,英国女皇的官 邸,现在是英国最高统治者行政总部。

游客: 我们可以参观吗?

导游: 可以,一般来说,需要提前预订门票。每年有5万人被邀请为贵宾赴宴、午餐、 晚餐和参加皇家园林晚会。

游客: 我可以在这里拍照吗?

导游: 沿着圣·詹姆斯宫走。你可以拍一些卫士的照片。让我们横过皮卡迪利大街,你可 以现场购物。往东方向走就可以到达皮卡迪利广场——并且在厄洛斯前面可以拍 一些照片。

游客: 今天还有什么活动?

导游: 在你们横过亨格福德大桥之前,我真心推荐你发些时间参观国家艺术画廊。我将 在这里等你们40分钟。

导游: 现在是我们离开这里的时间了。你们认为伦敦怎么样?

游客: 太美了, 你为我们明天做一个安排好吗?

导游: 好的。我们将参观这个城市的一些古迹、财政区域和这个城市著名的一些地标。

游客: 非常好。我们都全靠你了,你得给我们带路。

导游: 我很乐意,谢谢你们的合作。明天见!

III. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 你曾经去过国外吗?

Have you ever visited a foreign country?

2. 如果你去海外旅游,你参加保价旅行还是单独去?

When you go abroad, you would like to enter into insured trip or to go alone.

3. 我打算带你参观这个国家所有名胜。

I'm going to show you round all the famous places in this country.

4. 你给我推荐一些可以供游览的风景区好吗?

What would you advise me to see here?

5. 恐怕两天时间不够游览伦敦所有的名胜古迹。

I'm afraid two days' time isn't enough for us to see all the places of interest in London.

IV. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. London is the country's political center. The British royal family, government, parliament and political parties headquarters are located here. Palace of Westminster, also known as the Assembly Hall is the administrative area of the UK Parliament, the House of Lords and the House of Commons. The South of Parliament Square is Westminster Abbey, built in 1065. and British king or queen has been crowned the and the wedding of royal family members was held here. There are the cemeteries of more than 20 King of England, the famous statesman, strategist, and Newton, Darwin, Dickens, Hardy and other scientists, writers and artists

伦敦是全国的政治中心,是英国王室、政府、议会以及各政党总部的所在地。威斯敏斯特宫是英国议会上、下两院的活动场所,故又称为议会大厅。议会广场南边的威斯敏斯特大教堂,1065年建成后一直是英国国王或女王加冕及王室成员举行婚礼的地方。内有20多个英国国王、著名政治家、军事家以及牛顿、达尔文、狄更斯、哈代等科学家、文学家和艺术家的墓地。

2. The Greater London area of 1580 square kilometers. London and the west by the North Atlantic warm current influence, is a temperate maritime climate. Seasonal temperature difference is small, cool summers and mild winters, humid air, more rain and fog, winter is even worse. Average temperature in January is 4.5°C, 7 month 18°C, annual precipitation of 1 100mm.

整个大伦敦市面积 1580 平方公里。伦敦受北大西洋暖流和西风影响,属温带海洋性气候,四季温差小,夏季凉爽,冬季温暖,空气湿润,多雨雾,秋冬尤甚。平均气温 1 月为 4.5° C,7 月为 18° C,年降水量为 1100 毫米左右。

V. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- T: We're lucky today.
- G: Yes, there aren't any clouds in the sky and we've got such a beautiful view here. Look! This is St. James Park. And there's Buckingham Palace. (那是白金汉宫)
- T: Where's Hyde Park?
- G: <u>It's on the other side of the palace.</u> (在白金汉宫的那一边)
- T: That's the place where people make speeches on Sundays, isn't? (人们星期日演说的地方)
- G: Yes, you're right. Politicians of all kinds, religious people, and one or two madmen.
- T: Well, are we going there today? I want to take some photos there.
- G: Sure. I can see you're enjoying your trip today. (看的出来今天你玩得很开心。)
- T: Of course. Everything's so striking and fascinating. (一切都那么突出,令人神往。)

Module Three

Life Service 模块三 生活服务

Module Three Life Service 模块三 生活服务

Unit One

Dating Affairs 第一单元 处理日常事物

俗语

热情友好, 宾客至上

Introduction

高素质导游员应该德才兼备,必须像蜜蜂采蜜那样来丰富自己的知识。导游员应该 是旅游业的先锋,山河的挚友,友谊的使者,精神文明建设的宣传者和中华文化的传播 者。导游在旅游中应该尽量让游客满意并设法让游客获得最多的享受,但是导游员在对 外交往中不能丧失人格、国格。导游员应该特别注意游客的人身安全。

Discussion

- 1. What should the qualifid tour guide do?
 - The qualifid tour guide should be like a bee collecting honey to enrich himself/herself. The qualifid tour guide should be a pioneer of tourism industry, intimate friend of mountains and rivers, envoy of friendship, disseminator of preserving and promoting morals and fine human traditions, and publicity agent of Chinese culture.
- 2. Why can tour guides not abandon personal and national dignity when involve in overseas contacts?
 - Because he/she represents the Chinese people, interpreting and introducing our country to overseas visitors. A man's behavior is the reflex of his world outlook (一个人的行为是一种高素质观的反映). A qualifid tour guide must have a strong sense of national self-respect and integrity.



Part One Situational Dialogue

在上海询问游览信息

(G=导游, T=游客)

导游: 先生, 早上好! 我们能帮您吗?

游客: 小姐,早上好!我妻子和我一起来上海旅游。你能为我们简单的介绍一下上海吗?

导游: 当然可以。上海中国大陆第一大城市,四个中央直辖市之一; 上海许多项目创造和打破了世界纪录。上海位于我国大陆海岸线中部的长江口,拥有中国最大的外贸港口、最大的工业基地、中国的金融之都。有超过 2 000 万人居住和生活在上海地区。上海又是一座新兴的旅游目的地,具有深厚的近代城市文化底蕴和众多的历史古迹。奥巴马总统访华第一站就是上海。

游客: 你能为我们介绍一下这里的主要游览胜地吗?

导游:好的。主要旅游胜地包括浦东、外滩、豫园、玉佛寺、少年宫、工艺美术研究所、游黄浦江、上海博物馆、鲁迅纪念馆、宋庆龄故居、青浦风景区和大观园等。

游客: 今天我们想去见识一下上海的著名景点。你能给我们一些建议吗?

导游: 好的。我建议你们先去浦东。浦东在黄浦江和长江入海口之间。

游客: 浦东就是黄浦江之东是吗?

导游: 是的。它是中国最活跃的地区。

游客: 然后再游览哪里呢?

导游: 你们可以参观玉佛寺。那里存有两尊罕见的佛像,并因此而著名。这两尊佛像都是用整块白色的缅甸玉雕刻而成的。1890年,该寺建成八年后,佛像由中国僧人从缅甸带回。

游客: 听起来很有意义。那里应该很安静吧。

导游: 恐怕那里很拥挤。然后你们可以去豫园。

游客: 它以什么而著名?

导游: 豫园是一位官位显赫的朝廷官员依据苏州园林风格设计修建的私家园林。你们不 但能够欣赏古老的建筑,还可以挑选纪念品和古玩,还可以观赏饺子和其他中国 食品的现场制作。

游客: 太好了。就按您说的办。非常感谢!



询问信息的一些常用句型:

- 1. How are you going? Would you like to go by sea or by air?
- 2. Which place do you want to visit first?
- 3. Are there any places of interest in this city?
- 4. Would you please recommend some scenic spots for us to see here?



- 5. Is there anything interesting to see in this city?
- 6. Can you tell me which is the best tour route?
- 7. What would you advise me to see here?
- 8. Where is the busiest street in this city?
- 9. What is the price of this tour?
- 10. What is the fee of a guide per day?



► Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourist

处理日常事物

先生们,女士们:

欢迎大家来到中国!请允许我自我介绍一下,我叫李红,是你们的全程陪同。我来自中国国际旅行社。我是专门来接你们的。一路上好吗?你们有 28 人,对吗?你们总共有多少件行李?我明白了。大家取到行李后,请放在几辆手推车上。我会让行李员看管行李的。现在大家都到齐了。我们的车在机场外。大家请注意,现在跟我上车。

女士们,先生们!在中国期间我将与大家在一起我非常高兴。我的工作是为你们排忧解难,关心你们的待遇,尽力回答你们的问题,让你们开心。与其他城市比北京有很多优势,它是中国现代文化和传统文化的缩影。在北京市附近有许多的景点。当你们返回北京时,我将带你们参观这里的一些主要景点。现在我们直接乘火车去湖南。今晚我们将睡在从北京到湖南长沙的火车上。请领队给旅游团队成员安排软卧小客房。客房四个人一间。在上车之前,与团队成员商量按房间号码分配好小客房。上车后,请领队弄清楚用餐时间、洗手间和餐厅的位置并通知到各个小客房。各位请注意!我们已经到达火车站了。我们从二号站台上车,请带好自己的行李一起进站吧!

女士们,先生们!现在我们到达了长沙火车站。请下车!大巴车正在等我们。让我们出去吧。看!这正是接我们的汽车,请大家一个一个的上车吧。首先,我想向大家介绍一下吴女士,她是你们的地陪,来自湖南财信国际旅行社,在湖南境内将一直为你们服务。我再来介绍一下我们的司机。张先生一直为湖南旅游公共汽车公司工作。他的车牌号码是 XY12345。现在请吴女士为大家说几句话,大家欢迎!

李女士,谢谢您!女士们,先生们,晚上好!欢迎你们来到湖南,我们将尽量满足你们的要求让你们高兴、愉快!我想各位从美国到中国、从北京到湖南经过的这一段长时间旅行之后,都希望好好休息一下。所以现在我们直接去华雅国际大酒店。华雅国际大酒店是拥有江南园林和现代高尔夫球场的豪华生态园林酒店。2007年3月12日由国家旅游局正式授予五星级酒店。酒店位于长沙市万家丽中路2段81号。该酒店具有开阔的视野、完善的设施,恭候您!

当我们到达酒店时,我们将直接去休息室,在那里我将给你们分配房间和钥匙。服务员将尽可能快的为你们运送行李。晚餐在二楼餐厅时间,晚上 20:30。穿着随意。明天早餐从 07:30 至 08:45。大巴车早晨 9:00 从旅馆门口出发,主要参观湖南省博物馆和岳麓

书院。现金和旅行支票在旅馆都可以使用。记得把发票保管好。这里所有大型的商店都可以兑换外币。离开时,也很容易换成你们所需要的货币。如果大家对此有任何疑问,请毫不犹豫地与我们联系与交流。谢谢大家的合作。明天见!



Part Three Supplementary Reading

The Privacy of Photographs

Discussion.

- Why was Liu Ying embarrassed?
 Because North Americans think a picture album is private and not something that one may leaf through casually.
- 2. How might Liu Ying have avoided the embarrassing situation?

 It depends on how the album was presented—whether Liu Ying was allowed to leaf through the whole album. Liu Ying might have avoided the embarrassing situation simply by asking, "Oh, these pictures are lovely. May I look at the others?"



Part Four Working Skills

- A. Photograph-Taking Skills Omitted
- B. Communicating Case on Taking Photos

关于拍照的技巧

- 游客: 我有一架双镜头反射式照相机。
- 导游: 用双镜头反射式照相机,你可以通过一面镜子直接看到你要拍下来的画面。
- 游客: 我的照相机没有胶片,你知道怎么操作这台相机吗?
- 导游:将胶卷插入一边,然后将胶卷空段转入另一边。穿好后,盖上相机后盖,再卷片。 胶片已经卷好待用。
- 游客: 怎样拍照片呢?
- 导游:每按一次按钮就拍下一张照片。按按钮时,要握稳照相机,注意不要把手放在镜子前面。如果你想显出空中的云彩,你最好使用滤色镜。你应该把被摄物框在界限内。把取景器举得紧靠眼睛。明白吗?
- T: 你给我拍一张怎么样?
- G: 好的!别动,笑笑。我给你拍一张在岩石上的照片。你很上照。

Exercises: Answer the following question.

What must the qualified tour guide know when tourists want to take photos?
 He/She must know the best place to take pictures, and give tourists some guidance or help to



- select best places and scenery to pose for pictures.
- 2. What should the qualified tour guide warn when tourists want to take photos? He/She should keep tourists out of those places where no pictures are permitted.
- 3. What advantages are there with twin-lens reflex camera? With a TLR you can see through a mirror exactly what you're going to record.
- 4. Do you know how to use the camera without film?

 Slot the cassette in one side, and then thread the film leader the other side. When this done, close the camera back and wind on. The film is spooled for use.
- 5. Do you know how to take photos?

A photo's taken each time that button is pushed. Steady your camera when you press the button. Hold the camera steady not to put your hand in front of the lens.



ightharpoonse hoart Five $\;$ Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. If you are Li Ming, national guide from Hunan International Travel Service, please introduce yourself.
 - Welcome to China! Allow me to introduce myself to you. My name is Li Ming, I'm your national guide from China International Travel Service.
- 2. How do you make tourists understand your duty?

 Ladies and Gentlemen! My job is to smooth your way, care for your welfare, try my best to answer your questions and to be your guide. During your stay in China I will try to do my best to warm your heart, let you have a good time.
- 3. Please assign roommates to the soft- berth compartments orally.
 Please Your tour leader assign roommates to the soft-berth compartments. There are four people to a compartment. Awange the tour members of their room numbers before boarding the train.
- 4. How do you provide convenience for tourists once on board as a tour guide?

 Attention, please! Once on board, find out meal times and location of rest rooms and dining car and inform each of the compartments.
- 5. How will you tell tourists to get on the train orally when you have arrived at the Railway Station?
 - Now we have arrived at the Beijing Railway Station. We will get on the train from Platform Two. Please take your baggage, let's go into the station together.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 所有关于房间、食品和日常用品等请直接和地陪联系。 All problems with hotel rooms, food, supplies, etc. should be directed to local guide. 2. 当首次到达一个新地方和遇见地陪时,全陪和旅游团陪同先下车。

When arriving at a new place and meeting a local guide for the first time, the national guide should be first off the coach along with the overseas tour escort.

3. Schedules are tight. Be on time.

日程安排很紧,请大家准时。

- 4. If you smoke, break up the tobacco, take the paper and filter part away with you. 如果你们抽烟,熄掉烟蒂,再把烟纸和过滤嘴分离。
- 5. Advise the overseas tourists not to drink any tap water. 建议海外游客不要喝任何自来水。

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. At boarding, you should be the last one to leave. Count the tour members and be sure nothing has been left behind. Carry-on luggage should be limited to what each person can carry himself or herself.

在登机的时候,你应该是最后一个离开。清点团队人数,确保无人掉队。手提行李控制在自己能携带的范围。

2. In most cases, they'll find your luggage. But you must not forget one thing when you're at the check-in counter. Make sure you get a baggage check stub (存根). Without it, the airline will have great difficulty helping you.

在大多数情况下,他们会找到你的行李。但是千万别忘了,在办理登机手续时,一定 要拿到寄运行李的存根。若没有存根航空公司帮你的忙就很困难了。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

At the Lost and Found Office

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- G: What can I do for you? (我能为你做点什么吗?)
- T: I found my handbag was lost in the office. <u>Could I have registered</u> (我可以做一个登记吗)?
- G: Sure. Could you fill out the lost property form (你填一下失物单好吗)?
- T: OK.
- G: <u>Make sure you've written everything clearly</u> (一定把每一项都写清楚). Could you describe it a little bit?
- T: <u>It's a brown leather one with black belt</u> (那是一只带黑色带子的棕色皮包). There's a novel in it.
- G: The name of the novel, please?
- T: Gone with the Wind (飘).



Handling Emergency 第二单元 处理紧急事件

俗语

不怕一万,就怕万一

Introduction

当一个游客病倒了,导游应该建议他/她及时咨询医生。导游应当确保游客行李的运输。与酒店和当地的导游协调好游客的安排工作。在紧急情况下保持冷静和机智果敢。 万一遇到游客死亡情况,应该及时报告所在旅行社。如果可能的话,尽可能详细地向大 使馆汇报情况,并把死者生前遗物运回相关国家。

Discussion

- What should the tour guide do when a tour member falls ill?
 The tour guide should advise him/her to consult a doctor in no time and supervise the transporting of the tour members' luggage.
- 2. What should the tour guide do in an emergency? Be calm and resourceful in an emergency.



1. In an emergency, be calm and resourceful. 在紧急时刻应该沉着机敏。



Part One Situational Dialogue

我迷路了

(T=游客, G=导游)

游客: 打扰了,请问人民公园在那里?

导游: 人民公园在南京路上,靠近西藏路,就在公园旅馆的对面。

游客: 要多久才能到达那里?

导游: 只要30分钟左右。

游客: 我没有走错方向, 是吗?

导游: 你没有走错,走到下一个街角,然后向左拐到中央街,走过三个街区到第二大街 再向右转。再走两个街区,在您左边就可以看到人民公园了。

游客: 对不起,我没有听清楚你的话,请您再说一遍行吗?

导游:好吧。首先,走到下一个街角,然后向左拐到中央街。

游客: 嗯。

导游: 然后, 走三个街区到第二大街再向右转。这回明白了吗?

游客: 是的,我正在听着呢。

导游: 然后,再走两个街区,您就回在路的左边看到人民公园了。

游客: 是的,现在我全明白了。我可以乘公共汽车去那里吗?

导游: 你可以乘 20 路无轨电车去那里。

游客: 太好了。谢谢!

导游: 不用谢!



hilderrightarrow Part Two A Guide Speech to Tourists

在飞机上的注意事项

女士们,先生们!早上好!联合航空公司飞往芝加哥的 36 次航班在 16 号登机口登机。所有乘客应现在登机。我可以看看您的登机牌吗?请往这边走。一直走到后面,有服务员会帮助您。所有随身携带的行李必须放在您前面座位底下或您头顶上方的空隔间里。你们现在不能使用洗手间,等飞机起飞后再用。

女士们,先生们!我代表联合航空公司的机长和全体机组成员欢迎您乘坐飞往芝加哥的航班。我们的飞行时间大约 45 分钟,飞行高度为 8 000 英尺,巡航速度为每小时 250 英里。我想请你们注意在您前面座位口袋里的"飞行安全手册",我们请您务必阅读。同时,你还会发现一本《飞行路线》杂志,您或许会对此感兴趣。不熟悉此类飞机的乘客请注意,在机舱右侧,当机舱前面的信号关闭后,您可以抽烟。请您任何时候都不要在飞机后部的厕所内吸烟。机上没有免税店。飞行中您可以买到香烟、烈酒、啤酒及矿泉



水。如果您在飞行中有任何疑问,请随时向两位空乘人员询问。现在请系好安全带,将 桌子垂直放好,我们准备起飞。在飞机起飞和着陆时咀嚼口香糖,可避免海拔高度的变 化引起耳部不适。祝您飞行愉快,谢谢!

女士们,先生们!在飞行过程中应该做些肢体伸展运动防止肌肉痉挛。在通道来回走走,扭扭脖子,转动肩膀和腰部。避免吃咸味花生之类的咸味食物,因为那会使您不停的喝水;可以吃些水果。飞行时喝水量应为你平时摄入量的两倍。在面部和双手擦些滋润霜,以避免空气循环引起的干燥。坐在座位上,把双脚抬高些,并转动脚踝,以保持血液畅通。飞行中应避免饮用含酒精的饮料,酒精会导致时差综合症和脱水现象。这里供应尿布、奶瓶、调好的奶和婴儿食品。如果您在飞行过程中需要什么的话,请告诉我。服务车一会就到这边来。可是在经济舱,含酒精饮品是要付钱的。请您看一下这张价格表好吗?然后,您再告诉我你要什么?午餐一会就来。我为您点了鸡肉。请您把托盘桌打开吧,饭来了。

女士们, 先生们! 时间过得真快! 飞机很快就要着陆了, 请系好安全带。



Part Three Supplementary Reading

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Why is the most inexpensive way to travel by bus? Because buses provide cheap transportation.
- 2. What can allow you unlimited travel for a certain period of time?

 You can buy the special tickets that allow you unlimited travel for a certain period of time.
- 3. What suggestions are provided if you have to take a taxi?

 At first be sure the driver puts down the flag on the meter when you get in. Be sure that there is nothing on the meter before the taxi driver puts down the flag. Remember the license number of the taxi in case you meet a driver who offers poor service or is dishonest.
- 4. How will you pay by subway?

 You pay your ticket by putting money into slot machines. You must select the amount of the ticket depending on the distance you will ride. The ticket will then eject from the machine.
- 5. Why can not you throw the ticket away when you travel by Subway?

 Because you only use the ticket for entering and exiting subway station platforms.

陆地旅行注意事项

公共汽车:最便宜的旅行方法是乘公共汽车。公共汽车提供低廉的交通。有些交通 干线的公共汽车是有空调的而且比较豪华,能给乘客提供各种舒适条件。如果你想要看 更多的景点而不想花很多钱,你就可以乘公共汽车旅行。你可以买一种特殊的票,这种 票可以让你在一定时期内无限次乘车。用这一方法,你可以在沿线任何地方停留,参观 最让您感兴趣的地方。

地铁: 买票时,把钱投入一个有夹缝的机器里。根据你要行走的路程来选择票价。



然后票就会从机器中弹出。在出入地铁站台时都要用票,所以不要把票仍掉。没有人收票,只有机器。

出租车:几乎每一个城镇中,旅游者都会发现出租车是价格最贵的交通方式。如果您的确要打车的话给您几项建议。上车时要确信司机重打计价器。在司机按下计价器之前,要确保计价器上显示为零。记下出租车牌号,以便投诉司机劣质服务或欺骗行为。



⊳ 🏳 art Four Working Skills

- A. Photograph-Taking Skills
- B. Communicating Case on Taking Photos

Exercises: Answer the following questions

- What should you study when you are walking?
 Study the streets you often use and learn which stores are open late at night in case an emergency arises.
- 2. What should you do when returning to your place if you see something or someone who makes you uneasy?
 - When returning to your place, take a good look around you. If you see something or someone who makes you uneasy, don't go inside. Go to a neighborhood store instead.
- 3. When should you walk carefully?
 - You should keep on the lookout to see who is standing near you or walking toward you. You walk where it is well lighted. Stay away from darkened building entrances, doorways, alleyways and high shrubbery. Travel and shop with companions whenever possible during the daytime, and especially at night. If you are on an unfamiliar or lonely street, quicken your pace and act as if you are going to meet someone who is waiting for you.
- 4. Why don't you fight back while fighting with purse-snatchers?

 Don't fight back. A number of people have been seriously injured or worse. It is not worth getting permanently injured to protect a few things or a few dollars.
- 5. Why can not you carry your handbag or shopping bag with the loop wrapped around your wrist?
 - If someone tries to pull it away from you, the loop will handcuff you, and you may be pulled to the ground and injured.

保护方法

如果想有效的预防犯罪就必须消除日常行为中的可乘之机。遇到罪犯或者犯罪的时候要保持冷静。以下为几点基本建议:



1. 提前准备

应该清楚自己走在哪里。研究一下常去的街道,弄清哪个商店晚上开到很晚,以防 发生意外。当回到住处之后,要仔细向四周看看。如果你看到觉得不对劲的事或人时, 不要走进去,而应到附近的商店去。如果你已经在楼内,看见一个陌生人向你的住处走 去,不要进去。到附近的地方去。装成一个行人的摸样,直到那个人走了为止。保护好 手提袋,拿一个带子很短的提包,紧紧靠近身体,或夹在胳膊低下。不要用没有拉锁或 良好关闭装置的包。

2. 走路要小心

应该注意向你走来或在你附近的人。走在明亮的地方,远离哪些黑暗的楼道入口、门口、胡同口及高密的灌木丛。如果可能的话,要跟同伴一起旅行或购物,特别是在晚上。如果你在一个不熟悉或寂静的街道上,加快步伐,装作要去见一个正在等你的人的样子。

3. 要明智

只带够花的钱就可以了,如果因为特殊原因带很多的钱的话,不要全放在一个地方。但是你时刻都应该带些钱在身上,因为有时如果强盗找不到钱会把人痛打一顿。不要还击,许多人都在与抢劫犯的搏斗中受伤,甚至出现更坏的结果。为了保护几件东西或几块钱终身伤害是不值得的。把钥匙放在衣服兜里或藏在身上。一个贼如果哪到你的钥匙或身份证明会轻松找到你的家,甚至还会出现更严重的后果。如果你的钥匙丢了或被偷了,及时报告。

4. 动脑筋

如果你去看电影或停下吃三明治,把包放在腿上。不要把包放在地板上、其他椅子 上或椅背上。当你买东西时,如果上公共厕所,也不要那样做。不要把提包或购物用的 包的带子绕在在手臂上。如果有人想把它枪走的话,带子会卡住你的手腕,你会被拖倒 在地上受伤的。



lacksquare lacksquare art Five $\,\,$ Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. How must carry-on luggage be placed?
 - All carry-on luggage must be placed underneath the seat in front of you or in the overhead compartment.
- 2. When can passengers use the lavatory by plane?
 - They must wait until after they take off
- 3. When is smoking permitted?
 - Smoking is permitted on the right hand side of the passenger cabin once the signs at the front of the cabin have been switched off.
- 4. What should you do in preparation for take-off?
 - Please ensure that your seat belts are securely fastened and your tables are in the upright

position.

5. How can you keep your blood moving while you sit in your seat? Keep your blood moving by raising your feet and rotating your ankles.

II. Translate the following into English.

1. 一个人抢走了一位女士的包, 逃跑了。

A man snatched a lady's purse and ran away.

2. 那个年轻人长得怎么样?

What did the young man look like?

3. 他很高,穿着绿色夹克,褐色裤子。 He's tall, wearing a green jacket and brown trousers.

4. 我只是一个来旅行的学生,我没有太多的现金。 I'm just a traveling student and I don't have much cash on me.

5. 我的手提包丢了,我可以做一下登记吗? My handbag was lost. Could I have it registered?

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. Paying the fare is not so simple as it may seem because a driver has the right to charge you for any tolls he must pay to go over bridges, and he may also charge you a small fee for each piece of baggage. Remember the following when you pay the fare. Try to find out beforehand approximately what the taxi fare will be. If the charge is ten or more dollars higher than the expected price, refuse to pay the fare. If you have difficulty, try to find a policeman. Tip the cab driver about 15% of your base fare excluding the bridge tolls or luggage fees.

付车费并非像看上去那样简单。司机有权收取过桥费和行李服务费。付车费请记住以下几点。乘车之前要对车费大体心中有数。如果实际收费比预计收费高出十美元或更多,可以拒付。若遇到麻烦可以请警察帮忙。给司机的小费应大约是车费的 15%,不包括过桥费和行李费。

As for being caught in the rain in the sun, we feel deeply sympathetic for the tourists.
 However, the climate is beyond our control. Accordingly, there is no compensation for inclement weather.

关于在日光中突然阴天淋雨,我们深表同情,但是,天气情况非我们所能控制,十分 抱歉。我们想您也会同意我们的看法,对这种情况我们没有什么赔偿。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=Tour Guide; P=Policeman)

G: Hello, I'm a Chinese tourist and I want to repot a burglary. (我想报一起入室行窃案)



- P: Your name and passport number, please. (请问您的姓名和护照号码)
- G: Liu Ying and 903635916
- P: OK. What's the matter?(发生什么了?)
- G: I just came back to find my room burgled. (我回来发现我的房间被盗了)
- G: Tell me your hotel and room number.
- T: Room 326, Hollywood Hotel. (好莱坞旅馆)

Unit Three

Eating Out 第三单元 外出就餐

俗语

民以食为天,食以安为先

Introduction

如果你作为导游在酒店迎接客人,他们到达后要用友好的方式招待他们,安排好座 位和就餐预订手续。在大多数情况下,如果餐馆没有调酒员,他们就座后通常女主人会 从客人那里接过定单,当她离开时你也要以导游的身份表示感谢。

Discussion

- What should you do if you welcome guests?
 You greet them in a friendly way and seat the quests when they arrive, and to arrange reservations in restaurants. I
- 2. What should you do if the restaurant does not have a wine waiter? The hostess also takes drink orders from the guests after they have been seated.

 You also thank the guests.



Part One Situational Dialogue

在 餐 馆

(W=服务员: T=游客)

服务员: 晚上好,女士们!

游客: 晚上好。

服务员: 这是菜单。想要什么?

游客: 我们想尝尝北京菜。你能给我们推荐几样菜吗?

服务员: 好的。我给你们推荐北京烤鸭。

游客: 看起来不错也很好玩。请你给我示范一下怎样吃这道菜,好吗?

服务员: 当然可以,先生。首先,左手拿薄饼,用大葱蘸少量面酱涂到上面去,然后将 葱段放在薄饼中央,再夹几片鸭肉在上面。最后将薄饼卷起来便可以使用。

游客: 我们来试一试。这样做对吗? 真是又嫩又脆!我从来没尝过如此好吃的烤鸭。 这一定很难做吧?

服务员: 制作过程有些复杂。

游客: 要烤多长时间呢?

服务员: 大约50分钟。等鸭皮发脆。呈现暗红色时,鸭子就烤成了。

游客: 真有趣! 离开这座城市以前再来品尝一次,好吗?

服务员: 当然可以。



>> Part Two Guide Speech

中国烹饪

先生们, 女士们!

欢迎来到中国!中国菜既有趣又吸引人。很多朋友来中国就是为了品尝这儿的菜肴。中国烹饪艺术在世界都很文明。三千年前,中国人就知道怎样实使用 5 种作料称为五味—辛(辣),甘(甜),酸,苦和咸。今天中国烹调方法在世界处于领先地位,中国式餐馆遍布世界各地。中国菜强调色、香、味、意、形、养俱佳。特别强调刀工和火候的控制。根据初步统计,在中国有 5 000 多种烹饪风格。在中国形成了最受欢迎的十大菜系:形成众所周知的代表中华美食文化的十大菜:北京(京)菜、湖南(湘)菜、广东(粤)菜、江苏(淮阳)菜、上海(本邦)菜、四川(川)菜、山东(鲁)菜、浙江(浙)菜、福建(闽)菜和安徽(徽)菜等。下面为十大菜系:

北京菜:以北京菜为中心的菜肴总称。主要由北京及山东风味所构成,并融合了清真菜、宫廷菜的特点。北京的食物往往是浓浓的芫荽、辣椒、大蒜,享有一个世纪的声誉。主要的烹调方法有炸,煎炒,炒和烘焙。著名的菜包括:北京烤鸭、涮羊肉、虾子海鲜和清蒸鲥鱼等。

湖南菜:它由湘江菜、洞庭湖地区菜和湘西地区菜组成。其特色是口味浓重、辛辣。辣椒、胡椒和葱在湖南菜中通常是必不可少的。在烹调方法上以腊、煨、蒸、炖诸法见称,在品味上注重于香鲜、酸辣、软嫩。特色菜有:东安子鸡、麻辣童子鸡和蒸腊肉。

广东菜:它由广州菜、潮州菜和东江菜组成,以选料新鲜、口味鲜嫩著称。广东菜主要原料有:海鲜、淡水鱼和家禽等。基本烹调技艺有:烤、炒、嫩、煎、炸、焖、炖和蒸。最常用蒸和炒来保持原料原味。广东厨师也很注重菜式的精美雅致。代表菜有鱼翅汤、脆皮乳鸽和牦油牛肉。

江苏菜:也叫淮扬菜,主要由江南水乡的扬州、镇江和淮安菜组成。菜肴轻轻调味, 很营养并且保存了食物的原始风味。它不仅选料精良,而且以刀工精细、制作精美、赏



心悦目而闻名。烹调技艺包括: 炖、焖、烤和煨。淮扬菜口味清淡、鲜冷、味甜,而且菜式精美雅致。特色菜有: 松鼠鳜鱼、水晶肉、脆皮鳝鱼。

上海菜:原以红烧、生煸等见长,后来吸取了无锡、苏州、宁波等地方菜的特点,兼及西菜、西点之法,具有风味独特、口味多样等特点,上海菜通常采取炒、烧、炸、蒸、炖、烤、焗等制作方法。上海菜以酱油重、汤浓、味甜和味道天然而著称。上海菜肴油水较重而京菜的味咸调料多;上海菜比广东菜味道更浓;上海菜偏甜。特色菜有红烧排翅、蝴蝶燕窝、葱油荷叶粉蒸鸡等。

川菜:起源于四川、重庆,是一种很著名的中国菜,以辛辣、刺激的口味为主要特点。川菜调味多样,有一菜一格、百菜百味之称。川菜主要强调使用辣椒和花椒粉。烹饪时也会使用蒜、姜豉等调料。食用草药、家禽、鸟常用作做菜的原料。烹饪技艺有嫩煎、爆、干煸、腌等。特色菜有:宫保鸡丁、回锅肉、麻婆豆腐。

山东菜:山东菜由济南菜和胶东菜组成,味道清爽、纯正、不油腻,以强调香、鲜、脆、嫩为主要特点。山东菜常用大葱和大蒜作调料。主要烹调技艺包括爆熘、扒、烤、煮、蜜。特色菜有:葱烧海参、糖醋黄河鲤鱼、生焖鲍鱼。

浙江菜: 由杭州、宁波和绍兴等地的地方菜组成,以特殊的风味和口感而著称,精心选择配料、严格控制时间。浙菜专攻炒、炸、炖、蒸、获得自然的风味及口感。特别强调在烹饪过程中,让食物又嫩又新鲜。杭州菜是其中最著名的。特色菜有: 西湖醋鱼、龙井虾仁、叫花鸡。

福建菜:由福州菜、潮州菜和东江菜组成。口味以清淡甜酸为主。大部分的菜肴用酒浸泡、酸甜,特别对各种海鲜美食,炒、熘、煎、煨选料精细而广泛,擅长于海鲜烹制;刀功严谨,色香味形俱佳。特色菜有:佛跳墙和龙身凤尾虾。

安徽菜:安徽菜特别注意烹调温度,安徽厨师擅长焖和炖。它由皖南、沿江、沿淮三种地方风味所组成。常加入火腿提味,加入冰糖提鲜。非常鲜明的特色安徽菜不仅在于精心选择烹饪原料也在严格控制烹饪过程。在安徽美食中含有多种成分,如穿山甲、石青蛙、蘑菇、杨梅、茶叶、竹笋、枣子,他们主要来自山区。黄山拥有丰富的烹饪原料。白嫩笋生长在黄山可以制成美味的食物。香菇,是一种高档蘑菇,长在古树上,也很好吃。特色菜有。茶叶熏鸡和黄山炖鸽。

每年都有上百万的人来到我们国家观赏自然美景、历史遗迹,体验当地风俗,同时,去吃异国菜肴也成为施行者去外国旅游的重要目的。不同的地方人们种植和吃的食物不同,所以中国不同地区都有不同的烹饪风格。要想品尝所有不同种类的中国菜肴得花很长一段时间。希望你们不要错过品尝中国各地方特色菜肴的机会。



ightharpoons \mathbb{P} art Three $\;$ Supplementary Reading

Imperial Court Cuisine

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

1. Who did ever Imperial Court Cuisine prepare for?



Imperial Court Cuisine (or Imitation Imperial), as the name suggests, consists of dishes once prepared exclusively for the imperial family.

- 2. How did people cook Imperial Court Cuisine?
 - The dishes were not only meticulously prepared, but also included rare and expensive food stuffs.
- 3. What kinds of food were there in Imperial Court Cuisine?
 - There were often some rare and expensive food stuffs, such as bear's paws, birds' nests, shark's fins, venison, sea cucumbers, duck webs and other delicacies of land and sea.
- 4. How do people cook Imperial Court Cuisine today?
 - The Imperial Cuisine today is based on the dishes prepared by the Qing imperial kitchens but further developed ever since.
- 5. Can you give some examples of Imperial Court Cuisine today?
 - Pea flour cake, kidney bean roll, small steamed corn bread and sesame seed cake with meat fillings.



ightharpoonup igh

- 1. meticulously adv. 细致地;一丝不苟地;拘泥地
- 2. foodstuffs *n*. 食品: 粮食 (foodstuff 的复数形式)
- 3. consort *n*. 配偶: 伙伴: *vt*. 使结合: 使联系: *vi*. 结交: 陪伴: 符合
- 4. venison n. 鹿肉; 野味
- 5. duck web 鸭蹼
- 6. refreshment n. 点心: 起提神作用的东西;
- 7. palatable adj. 美味的,可口的;愉快的
- 8. pea flour cake 豌豆黄
- 9. kindney bean roll 芸豆卷
- 10. small steamed corn bread 小窝窝头
- 11. sesame seed cake with meat fillings 肉末烧饼



1. Imperial Court Cuisine 宫廷菜:中国历代宫廷中都设有专司饮食的机构和人员,以供帝王后妃等皇室成员们享用。自商周起至清朝末,宫廷菜肴的烹制不断朝着精益求精的方向发展,最终成为中国古代烹饪技艺的经典和集大成者,成为中华菜肴的杰出代表。





Table Manners between Chinese and Westerners

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- Why do people need to study the table manners?
 It is a symbol of country. It can deepen the friendship between host and guests.
- 2. Why do Chinese people need to understand different table manners between Chinese and Westerners?
 - In China we have many chances of having a dinner in a Western restaurant or eating with foreigners. Therefore it is helpful for us to know different table manners between Chinese and Westerners
- 3. What is considered as the bad manner, which Chinese and Westerners both recognize? Please give an example.
 - In most Western restaurants and homes, dinner is enjoyed with hushed voices. And it is bad manner to speak with one's mouth full of food. Therefore one should eat with mouth closed. "Slurping" soup, coffee, or wine is also forbidden.
- 4. What differences are there among Chinese, American and European using knife or fork?

 This rule is shared by Chinese people. Knife is used only for cutting. In north America, the fork is held in the left hand and the knife in the right hand while food is being cut, and then the knife is put down and the fork is transferred to the right hand for eating. In Europe, the fork is kept in the left hand and knife in the right all the time.
- 5. What is the bad manner when Chinese use their chopsticks? It is not mannered to play chopsticks during meals. Don't touch the chopsticks when you have sited. Don't use your own chopsticks to take dish for the senior and other quest. If you really want to take dish for them to show you enthusiastic and hospitable, you can use serving chopsticks.



I. Answer some questions according to the guide speech.

- 1. What are five flavors on Chinese cuisine? Pungent, sweet, sour, bitter and salty.
- How many cooking styles are there in China?
 According to the rough estimate, there are more than 5 000 different local cooking styles in China.
- 3. What are the most popular cooking styles in China?

The most popular cooking styles in China are those of Beijing (jing), Hunan(xiang), Guangdong (Yue), Huaiyang (Jiangsu), Shanghai(hu), Sichuan(chuan), Shandong(Lu), Zhejiang(zhe), Fujian (min), and Anhui (Hui).

4. What does Jiangsu Cuisine mainly consist of?
It mainly consists of Yangzhou, Zhenjiang, and Huaian cuisine.

5. What are the features of Shanghai food?

It is ill mannered to play chopsticks during meals. Touch the chopsticks when you have sited. Use your own chopsticks to take dish for the senior and other quest.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 烹饪在中国是一种真正高度发展的艺术。 Cooking is a really developed art in China.

2. 中国菜以五味为主,这五味是酸、甜、苦、甜、咸。

The Chinese cuisine is based on five tastes.

3. 中国烹饪有很多不同的配料。

There are many different ingredients in Chinese cooking.

4. 粤菜清淡、川菜辛辣、沪菜重油、京菜咸香。

Guangdong food is a bit light. Sichuan food has a strong and hot taste. Shanghai food is rather oily and Beijing food is salty and spicy.

5. 烹制西餐时,严格按书上的说明依次加料,而中国菜的烹调则允许制造,允许艺术加工。

In Western cooking, recipes are followed strictly like laboratory instructions, while Chinese cooking always allows for a creative and stylistic touch to it.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. If you eat with visitors at the same table, don't make a long arm; don't stretch for something, especial across the table. It is not correct to speak while one's mouth is full.

如果你和客人在同一桌吃饭,不要伸长手。不要把手伸过去取菜,特别是横过桌面。一边吃一边讲话是不礼貌的。

- 2. 8 Chinese dishes which are foreigners favorite includes:
 - Sweet and Sour Pork
 - Gong Bao Chicken
 - Mapo Beancurd
 - Wonton Soup
 - Dumplings
 - Spring Rolls
 - Chow Mein
 - Peking Duck



外国人最爱吃的8大中国菜

第一道: 糖醋里脊 Sweet and Sour Pork

第二道: 宫保鸡丁 Gong Bao Chicken

第三道: 麻婆豆腐 Mapo Beancurd

第四道: 馄饨 Wonton Soup

第五道: 饺子 Dumplings

第六道:春卷 Spring Rolls

第七道:炒面 fried noodles

第八道: 烤鸭 Peking Duck

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

At a Restaurant

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist; W=Waiter)

- G: Let's go and have something to eat.
- T: Good. I'm really hungry.
- G: Have you tried Chinese food?
- T: No, but I'd like to try.
- G: Can we see the menu, please?
- W: Sure. Here you are.
- G: Thanks. Let's see the menu first. After you with the order. (你先点)
- T: All right, I'll order the same. (行,我也点同样的)
- W: Everything is ready (一切都准备好了). Please help yourself.
- G: To your health!
- T: Cheers!
- G: I hope you like the food here.
- T: Oh, it's delicious.
- G: Try some of this fish, please.
- T: Thank you. It's very good fish.
- G: Have another piece of Peking duck? (再来一片北京烤鸭好吗?)
- T: I'm afraid I can't have any more.
- G: Waiter! May I have the bill, please?
- T: No, no. It's on me this time. (这次我请客)

Unit Four

Shopping 第四单元 购物

俗语

薄利多销

Introduction

购物是游客旅行时必不可少的活动。购物在旅行过程中担负着重要的作用,有助于游客永远记住旅行经历;那就是为什么大多数来自世界各地的游客想在旅行生活中购买纪念品的原因。

Discussion

- Why is shopping an indispensable activity while traveling?
 Because shopping can play an important role in helping the tourists remember the traveling experience forever.
- 2. Why would most of the tourists around the world like to buy souvenirs during traveling life? Because souvenirs can help the tourists remember the traveling experience forever.



Part One Situational Dialogue

在工艺品商店

(A=营业员: T=游客)

营业员:欢迎光临。小姐,你要买点什么?

游客: 我想买些手工艺品作为纪念品送给家人和亲戚。 营业员: 我们这里的工艺品品种很多,你想要点什么?

游客: 我听说中国的工艺品做工精湛很有名气,我想要一些典型的中国工艺品。你能

为我们推荐点什么吗?

营业员:我们商店里面有上千种工艺品,仅举几个例子:唐三彩、刺绣、景泰蓝、蜡染、玉雕等。您考虑好买点什么吗?

游客: 还没有。不过我想应该是极具中国特色的,并且容易携带。

营业员: 唐三彩很漂亮,但容易碎;景泰蓝比较重而且容易损坏。我建议你们买些剪纸、刺绣、蜡染,这些东西便于携带。

游客: 既然如此,我们想看看刺绣。

营业员:在中国有四大名绣。湘绣,以狮虎见长。川绣,以鲤鱼和熊猫著名。苏绣,以猫和金鱼为特点。粤绣,以山水和花鸟出众。

游客: 真是太漂亮了,这正是我梦寐以求的。



Part Two A Guide Speech to Tourists

工艺品简介

女士们, 先生们!

现在我们已经到达了旅游局指定的纪念品店,是购物的时间了,请大家花点时间在这家商店买你们自己所喜欢的东西。首先,我想简单介绍一下中国的手工艺品。中国幅员辽阔、气候多变,因此,资源丰富。动荡的中国文明史留下了丰富的文化遗产,在传统的手工艺品上可以发现许多文明的痕迹。购物对来到中国的外国游客来说是主要的活动。传统的手工艺品显示了中国文化的重要方面。大多数来到中国的外国游客会买一些礼品作为纪念品。中国工艺品的"三大国宝"是北京的景泰蓝、江西省景德镇的瓷器和福建省福州的脱胎漆器。

这家商店里面有上千种工艺品。这里是最大的景泰蓝经销商。每天有成百上千的游客来这里来参观,选购不同种类的产品。我将告诉你们怎样挑选景泰蓝器皿。景泰蓝是中国最传统的手工艺制品之一。北京是景泰蓝的出产地。景泰蓝的制作工艺既运用了青铜和烧瓷的传统技术,又吸收了传统绘画和雕刻的技法,堪称中国传统工艺的集大成者。你们知道为什么被称为"景泰蓝"吗?因为景泰蓝在明代景泰年间很受欢迎,手工艺者发现深蓝色瓷铀给人华丽和庄重的感觉,所以深蓝色被普遍采用。中国景泰蓝的生产已经接近一千年的历史,但是这里的景泰蓝不是古董,否则价格就比预期的要高得多。最近,中国的手工艺者研发了多种颜色装饰技巧使景泰蓝器皿更精制更华丽。这里有各种类型的景泰蓝制品,大的如用来祭祀的器皿、桌子和椅子等,小的如筷子、耳环、糖果盒、牙签和烟灰缸等。

我们来看看这些陶瓷制品。陶瓷是许多传统工艺品之一。他们质量好,选择陶瓷是最明智的选择。中国的三大瓷都是江西省景德镇、湖南省醴陵和福建省德化。看景德镇产的这套瓷茶具真的不平常。你们知道这是什么吗?这是薄胎瓷,这种瓷器真的不错,它不是用来用的,还是用来观赏的。现在让我来介绍一下世界著名的唐三彩。它代表了中国传统手工艺品达到了很高的水平,它主要有黄、绿、棕三种颜色,故名唐三彩。唐



三彩是具有一千多年历史的艺术珍品之一,常常用做宫殿里的器具。因为西安周围出土了大量的唐三彩器物,所以被誉为唐三彩的故乡。

你们看到了那个拿着羽毛扇坐在椅子上的那个人了吗?他是诸葛亮,蜀国的丞相。在古代,扇子也受到文人墨客的青睐。为了显示他们的天赋,他们在扇子表面上写诗、画画。在传统的古代歌剧中,扇子是重要的道具。演员在不同的情景下用不同的方式挥动扇子能够明白他们内在性格。很快扇子就有了社会意义,成为了夏天标准精华装饰品的一部分。对外国游客来说,中国扇是非常受欢迎的旅游纪念品。他们式样多质量好。最著名的产扇区在浙江江苏和广东四川。这把扇子就是来自浙江省。檀香扇不仅有装饰作用,还有实用价值。

女士们,先生们! 你们都可以仔细地看看。买不买你们自己决定。如果你不喜欢,就不要付款。



hickspace extstyle ex

Prices of Goods

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What is the outstanding characteristic of prices of goods? In the United States, there is no "state price".
- 2. Why is the price on the label not the price you pay in most cases? You will have to pay tax.(Usually the tax is between five and ten percent of the price on the label)
- 3. How do Americans get the right prices of goods?

 What they do is to shop around to find the store, which offers the item and quality they want at the lowest price.
- 4. When is the price of good the highest?

 Just before Christmas the prices are often highest.
- 5. Why do many people cross state lines to buy liquor, cigarettes, or automobiles, etc.? Because there are wide fluctuation in taxes in such items from state to state.

商品的价格

在美国没有"国家固定的价格"。如果你想买贵重物品,建议你对照一下几家商店的价格。在美国购物的时候应该注意,在大多数情况下,标签上的价格并不是你所需付的价钱,你还得交税。通常来说税金在价钱的百分之五与百分之十之间。

美国人买东西通常不讨价还价。他们的做法是四处转转,找一家商品质量最好、价格最低的商店。几乎所有在美国出售的东西都会因时间和商店的不同价格有所不同。圣诞节前夕价格最高,圣诞节过后的八月份众多商家打折期间价格最低。此外,聪明的购物者可以寻找一些甩卖的机会,这时你可以买到质量相同,但价格低廉的商品。有时价

格因州税和地方税的差异而不同;许多人经常跨州去购买酒、烟和汽车等商品,因为这些商品的税金在州与州之间有很大差别。



Shopping Guide

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- What should the tour guide do when tourists want to go shopping?
 The tour guide should know the great responsibilities for guiding the tourists to do shopping.
- What is the tour guide expected to give a brief introduction about?
 The tour guide is expected to give a brief introduction about the specialties and souvenirs in the local place.
- 3. Why is tour guide expected to give a brief introduction about the specialties and souvenirs in the local place?
 - Because the tourists have a general idea about what to buy.
- 4. How should the tour guide give assistance to the tourists when they are confused about the features, qualities, prices of the commodities?
 - What the tour guide suggests should be accurate and reliable.
- 5. What is the tour guide requested to make arrangements for?

 The tour guide is requested to make arrangements for the packaging or shipping of the goods selected and bought by any guest in your group.



$ightarrow \mathbb{P}$ art Five Consolidation

I. Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- Why is Luoyang's Tri-colored Glazed Pottery world famous?
 Because it represents the high level of Chinese traditional handicrafts. Tri-colored Glazed Pottery is one of Chinese art treasures for over 1 000 years, which was used as furnishings for the palace.
- 2. Where are China's three porcelain capitals?

 Jingdezhen in Jiangxi Province, Liling in Hunan Province and Dehua in Fujian Province.
- What are the three national treasures of Chinese arts and grafts?
 Cloisonne in Beijing, Pocelain in Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province and Bodiless Lacquer in Fuzhou, Fujian.
- 4. Where are the most famous fan-producing regions? Jiangsu, Zhejiang, Sichuan, and Guangdong Provinces.



5. Do you know why it is called Jingtailan?

Because the Cloisonnes became popular in the Jingtai period of the Ming Dynasty. The handicraftsmen found that a dark-blue enamel could give cloisonne a gorgeous, solemn look.

I. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. 中国书法、绘画是中国传统文化的典型代表。
 - Chinese calligraphy and paintings form a cross section of the traditional Chinese culture.
- 2. 中国四大名绣是苏绣、湘绣、粤绣和蜀绣。
 - The four most famous types of embroidery in China are embroideries from Jiangsu, Hunan, Guangzhou and Sichuan Provinces.
- 3. 中国三大著名特产为茶叶、丝绸和瓷器。
 - Tea, silk and porcelain are the three specialties in China.
- 4. 江西景德镇被誉为中国瓷都。
 - Jingdezhen is called "the Capital of Porcelain".
- 5. 文房四宝是湖笔、徽墨、宣纸、端砚著称。
 - The four treasures of the study are the writing brush, ink, the ink slab, and paper.

II. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

- 1. Tri-colored glazed pottery of the Tang dynasty is mainly in three colored glazed as yellow, green and brown, hence the name. Xi'an is the hometown of the tri-colored glazed pottery, for a large number of this pottery articles were unearthed from around the city.
 - 唐三彩多用黄、褐、绿三种釉色,故名唐三彩。因为西安周围出土了大量的唐三彩器物,所以被誉为唐三彩的故乡。
- 2. The working of cloisonne involves a very elaborate and complicated process. We are the biggest dealers in cloisonne and the sole product works in this area. Everyday, we get hundreds of tourists coming in for different sizes.
 - 景泰蓝的制作工艺非常精细,非常复杂。我们是本地区最大的景泰蓝经销商和唯一的 生产厂,每天有成百上千的游客到我们这里来参观。

III. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

Buying Presents

(A=Assistant; T=Tourist)

- A: Good morning, sir. What can I do for you?
- T: I'm trying to find a couple of suitable carpets.
- A: You have a couple of carpets of the right size to choose from, don't you?
- T: Yes, but I found it difficult to decide on the right design. (很难决定合适的图案。)



- A: What design do you think will appeal to your wife? (你认为什么样的图案你妻子会喜欢?)
- T: <u>That's the question I have in mind.</u> (那就是我考虑的问题) But personally, I like the simple design of flowers very much.
- A: That's really unique. (确实很特别) I bet your wife will like it.
- T: Thank you for reminding me. (谢谢你提醒我) My wife should like it.

Unit Five

Amusement 第五单元 娱乐

俗语

愿天下有情人终成眷属!

Introduction

娱乐中心常常为客人组织各种各样的娱乐活动。主要集中在艺术、健身和体育运动等方面。在愉快的氛围中,夜间俱乐部,迪斯科舞厅、卡拉 ok 酒吧常常为客人做好唱歌、跳舞、欣赏音乐和表演的准备。

Discussion

- What is the recreation center used for?
 The recreation center organizes a variety of entertainments and recreational activities for guests.
- 2. What kinds of activities do tourists often take part in?

 The night club, the disco, the Karaoke bar, the ball are ready for guests to sing, to dance, to enjoy music and floor show in a pleasant mood.



1. floor show 夜总会、酒吧等的现场表演,如唱歌、跳舞等。



Part One Situational Dialogue

在 戏 院

(G=导游; T=游客)

游客: 我们正好赶上。我们的座位号码是多少?

导游: 9排6号和7号

游客: 再往前走一点。请跟我来。

导游: 噢,到了,非常好。你觉得剧中的角色怎么样?

游客: 他们都很有人情味,无论是皇帝、学者还是美人,我都和他们一起幸福,一起悲 伤。我被打动了。

导游: 这部戏表达了传统的中国道德价值观。剧中的人物尽孝道,爱祖国,忠信于朋友。

游客: 非常有意思,不过最令我感动的是戏装的无比华丽和色彩的巧妙组合。

导游: 实际上,看了角色穿的戏装,经常看戏的观众会马上辨认出他的年龄、家庭背景、 所受教育、职业和社会地位。

游客: 似乎胡须也有特别的重要性,对吗?

导游: 是的。胡须可以分成三类: 带短胡须的是粗鲁的人, 带整齐而长的胡须的是奸诈 狡猾的人。

游客: 脸上的色彩也非常奇怪,这里面一定有什么讲究,是吗?

导游: 是的,红脸代表勇气、忠厚和正直,黑脸则代表鲁莽和暴躁。

游客: 太奇妙了。今晚京剧真的让我大开眼界。我们很荣幸能看这个演出。我想买一张 关于京剧的激光唱片, 您明天可以陪我去买吗?

导游: 当然可以,乐意为你效劳。



ightharpoons hoart Two $\;$ A Guide Speech to a Tourist

对中国表演的简单介绍

女士们, 先生们!

娱乐活动是你们旅行的重要部分。我们将根据你们的爱好要求来介绍、选择、安排 各种娱乐活动,如想看杂技团表演,去剧院看戏和看艺术团演出等。在看演出之前,先 向你们介绍演出的时间、地点、节目等。

今天我们将去看中国杂技团表演节目。节目非常好。其中一些赢得了各种知名的国 际竞赛金奖。如: 法国、匈牙利、俄罗斯和意大利的金奖。有各种各样的节目。他们有 魔术、空中飞人、走钢丝、甚至还有小丑。是一个集中国杂技艺术,中国功夫,中国舞 蹈和中国音乐的一个表演。七点钟在保利大厦国际剧院开演。现在已经 6:30, 我们走吧。 看空中飞人,真吓人。但不要担心,他们都是技术高超的杂技演员,而且他们身上还系 着安全带。看!这个小丑走在钢丝上,他还在向观众做鬼脸。现在,看那个顶碗的女孩。 这个节目还获得意大利国际杂技竞赛金奖。你们认为今晚的节目怎么样?大家都认为这 个节目很有中国特色,舞蹈、服装和艺术都太棒了。这表演主要让你们感受一下中国文 化。

明天我们将去剧院。我将向大家简单的介绍一下中国的传统剧艺以便了解戏剧的内 容、背景和文化。中国的传统剧艺,包括各种地区性戏曲、杂技和木偶戏等、种类繁多, 而京剧则是中国传统剧的主流。京剧是中国舞台上的一门综合性的艺术。京剧是一门古



老而高贵的艺术形式。京剧似乎是种内容丰富的艺术。京剧是一种集歌剧,歌唱,音乐,舞蹈,武术于一体的表演艺术。京剧是中国传统戏剧的典范,集"唱念做打"一身,具有很高的观赏价值。在传统戏剧京剧中,脸谱的色彩也体现了丰富的文化内涵。京剧脸谱是根据某种性格、性情或采用某些色彩的人物特殊类型为基础的。京剧的表演包括唱工、独白、身段和做手、演奏的乐器有鼓、锣、及二胡等中式关弦乐器。京剧的主要乐器有京胡,月琴,唢呐和鼓等。京剧的唱腔可以分为"西皮"和"二黄"。西皮清脆雄壮,二黄低沉郁哀。京剧的主要特点就是表演的程式化。现代京剧在形式上要比传统京剧灵活得多。京剧欣赏的主要欣赏对象应是表演者的功夫和魅力。生、旦、净、丑是京戏中的四个主要角色。梅兰芳是我国著名京剧表演艺术家,是京剧四大名旦之一。

京剧可是我们中国的国粹啊!现在京剧在全世界已越来越受欢迎。当京剧首次在华盛顿上演时,在观众中引起了轰动。文人画、书法、古典诗词和京剧,成为精神文化的四大名牌。



lacksquare lacksquare Supplementary Reading Comprehension

Beijing Opera

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- What roles in Beijing opera performances include?
 Dan(female), Sheng (male), Jing(painted-face) and Chou(clown).
- How does it present dramatic plays and figures?
 It presents dramatic plays and figures mainly by infusing four artistic methods: sing, dialogue, dancing and martial art.
- 3. What role is Zhengdan?

Zhengdan plays the part of the strong-minded middle-aged woman who behaves elegantly.

- 4. What role is Chou?
 - Chou is a comic role or villainous Character or righteous person.
- What does painted face often refer to? Please give some examples.
 Painted face often refers to male characters with unique appearance or personality, such as Bao Zheng and Cao Cao.



- 1. There are numerous regional branches of Chinese opera, of which the Beijing opera is one of the most notable.
 - 中国戏曲有众多地方分支流派,其中最著名的是京剧。
- 2. Beijing Opera is developed from absorbing many other dramatic forms, mostly from the local drama "Huangmei opera" which was popular in south China during the 18th century.

京剧在发展中吸收了许多其他戏剧形式,其中主要是18世纪在中国南方比较流行的地方"黄梅戏"。京剧是一种融合了音乐、表演、文学和脸谱的戏剧艺术。

3. sing, dialogue, dancing and martial art.

唱、念、做、打

4. Sheng is a common name of male characters.

生是男性角色的通称。



Arrangements of Tourist Activities

Exercises: Answer the following questions

- 1. What is the main part for a tourist? The sightseeing.
- 2. Why is entertainment a good way to make the traveling more interesting?

 Because it can not only make the tourists feel relaxed after the whole day's travel, but also give a chance to experience Chinese culture and people's real life.
- 3. How should the tour guide arrange proper entertainments?
 The tour guide should arrange proper entertainments according to the tourists' interests and the characteristics of the local place.
- 4. Why is the tour guide asked to get a deep understanding of the entertainments?

 Because the tour guide is asked to get a deep understanding of the entertainments so that he/she can introduce them effectively to the tourists.
- 5. What should the tour guide try the best to do if the entertainment is proposed by the tourists?

If the entertainment is proposed by the tourists, the tour guide should try the best to get the tickets and arrange the time. And the tour guide should accompany the group if it is necessary.



I. Answer questions according to the the guide speech learned.

- How should tour guides introduce, select, arrange various recreational activities?
 They will introduce, select, arrange various recreational activities according to tourists' interests and personal requirements.
- 2. What are the main programs of Chinese acrobatic troupe there? There are all kinds of programs such as magic shows, flying trapeze arts, tightrope walking and even the clowns.



- 3. What does the performance of Beijing Opera include? The performance of Beijing Opera includes songs, monologue, dances and pantomime.
- 4. What are singing styles of Beijing Opera divided into? They are divided into xi pi and er huang. Xi pi is melodious and full of power and grandeur, while er huang is lowering and sorrowing.
- 5. What were four nameplates of Chinese culture? Paintings, calligraphy, classical poetry and Beijing Opera were four nameplates of Chinese culture.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. He's always acting the experienced man who has seen everything. 他总是演那个见过世面的经验丰富的人。
- 2. The plot's quite simple, but the theme's great. 情节简单,但主题思想伟大。
- 3. Now it's time for a break. What do you think the last song? 现在是幕间休息的时间。你们觉得最后一首歌写得怎么样?
- 4. The costumes of the dancers are so gorgeous! 这些演员的服装真美。
- 5. The next one is dance called "Dance of the Peacock". 下一个是舞蹈孔雀舞。

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

- 3. As far back as the Yuan Dynasty, specialized roles like Dan(female), Sheng (male), Jing(painted-face) and Chou (clown) were introduced into the opera. In Beijing opera, traditional Chinese string and percussion instruments provide a strong rhythmic accompaniment to the acting.
 - 在元朝,生、旦、净、末、丑等角色就被引入戏剧。在京剧里,传统的中国管弦乐器 和打击乐器为表演提供了强节奏的伴奏。
- 4. The ancient acrobatics stemmed from the people's life and had a close link with their life and productive labor. Traditional acrobatic acts include Lion Dance, Cycling Feats and Tight-Wire Feats and so forth.
 - 早期的杂技源自人们的生活并与人们的生活和生产劳动密切相关。传统的杂技项目包 括舞狮、自行车特技和走钢丝等。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

Talking about Performance

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

G: Did you enjoy the play? (你欣赏这出戏吗?)



- T: I haven't seen a better play for quite a long time.
- G: How did you like the stage setting? (你觉得舞台布景怎么样?)
- T: There're constant changes of scene (布景不断变化), and the variety is interesting.
- G: What did you think of the love scene between him and the leading lady? (你看他和那女主 角的爱情场面怎样?)
- T: The leading actor is expert at conveying his role's fine feeling. The leading lady seems a little stiff. (这位女主角似乎有点呆板。)

谈论演出

导游: 你欣赏这出戏吗?

游客: 我很久没有看到一出更好的戏剧了。

导游: 你觉得舞台布景怎么样?

游客: 布景不断变化, 而这种变化是有趣的。

导游: 你看他和那女主角的爱情场面怎样?

游客:这位男主角善于表现他的角色的细腻感情。这位女主角似乎有点呆板。

Unit Six

Apologies 第六单元 道歉

俗语

化干戈为玉帛。

Introduction

中国有句俗语:"人非圣贤,熟能无过?"最好的导游不管他/她是多么小心也常会犯一些错误,因为在旅行过程中有太多的事情需要处理。一旦导游犯了错误,他/她必须有自我批评的精神,承认他/她的不当行为,并试图弥补它。一旦导游不能满足游客,他们要对不能做某事或所带来的一些麻烦表示道歉。如果可能的话,希望他们可以提供改进建议。最后再表示遗憾。前事不忘,后世之师。聪明的导游会从他/她的错误中吸取教训,让下次工作做得更好。

Discussion

- 1. What will the best tour guide do once he/she has made a mistake?

 Once the tour guide has made a mistake, he/she has to have the spirit of self-criticism, admitting his/her wrongdoing and trying to make up for it.
- 2. What should the tour guides do once they cannot meet tourists?

 Once tour guides can not meet tourists, they express their apologies for not being able to do something or bringing some trouble. If possible, they may offer a suggestion. Finally they may again show their regrets at the end.



1. Men are not saints, how can they be free from faults. 人非圣贤, 熟能无过。

2. A past experience, if not forgotten, can serve as guide for the future. 前事不忘,后事之师。



Part One Situational Dialogue

处理抱怨

(G=导游: T=游客)

导游: 一切都还满意吗?

游客: 不满意。你推荐的牛排不新鲜?

导游: 对此事很抱歉。这确是意外,因为我们每天都是从市场上进的新鲜牛排!我将调查此事。

游客: 这菜绝对是不新鲜。

导游:一定请您原谅。你试一试别的菜好吗?

游客: 我不想再试别的菜,我已经很烦心。

导游: 向你保证我们一定调查此事。我们有特别的厨师。我确保下次一切都达到您的要求。

游客: 还是别再提下次了。

导游: 我对我们的厨师有信心。就再给我们一次机会吧,到时你会发现我们的餐馆确实 名副其实。

游客: 好的,别再提此事了,我会再来的。

导游: 非常感谢,再见!



Part Two A Guide Speech to Tourists

对游客的一些基本要求

先生们、女士们,欢迎大家来到武汉。请允许我作自我介绍,我叫李兵。是你们的全程陪同。我来自中国国际旅行社。我非常高兴你们到中国旅游。在以下八天的旅行中,我将与大家在一起。能为大家服务,我感到很高兴。我希望我们在一起能够愉快。这是旅行社徽章,请别上;这是有旅行社标志的帽子,请带上。我想各位经过从美国到中国的这一段长时间旅行之后,都希望好好休息一下。

现在我们就去武汉丽江饭店。大家不妨欣赏一下沿途郊区和市区的景色。大家请往前看,就可以看到著名的黄鹤楼。这是忙碌的火车站。现在我们到了这个城市的文化区武昌区,在这个区有许多著名的大学。武汉丽江饭店坐落在白云黄鹤之乡—武昌城,占地面积约二万平方米。乘 5 分钟车就可到达黄鹤楼。离省博物馆仅 4 公里——被誉为世界奇迹的战国曾候乙编钟现藏于此馆。

现在我们已经到达饭店。这家饭店设有装备精美的客房 126 间,卫生设备齐全,并



配有中央空调和卫星电视网络,有国际国内直拔电话。饭店还拥有多项娱乐设施。这些是你们的房间钥匙。你们的房间在三楼,服务员会把你们带到你们的房间。你们一定感到很疲倦吧,如果没有什么事情帮忙的话,我要走了。我会在明天早上7点钟在一楼大厅等待大家进早餐,你们今晚可以好好休息一下了。希望你们在此酒店能过得愉快。



lacksquare lacksquare art Three lacksquare Supplementary Reading

Good service and Bad Service

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- What is indispensable for tour guide?
 Rich knowledge is indispensable for tour guide.
- 2. How do they become a successful tour guide? To be a successful tour guide, one must possess the superior skills and techniques of guiding, the ability to handle urgent problems and an excellent mastery of all phases and levels of professional work.
- How do they get the superior skills and techniques?
 Excellent skills and techniques must be continually and constantly practiced in guide work and in actual experience.
- 4. Why is aloofness unsuccessful for tour guide?

 Because the aloofness makes tourists feel unwelcome and lose interest in tourism.
- 5. What should a successful tour guide do for tourists? A successful tour guide should adopt the attitude of holding himself accountable for tourists, acting in their interests, sharing their feelings, working for their benefit and accepting their supervision.



ightharpoonup New Words and Expressions

- 1. indispensable adj. 不可缺少的;绝对必要的
- 2. interpretation n. 解释;翻译
- 3. imbue vt. 使感染; 使渗透
- 4. possess vt. 占有:拥有
- 5. mastery *n*. 掌握; 精通
- 6. phase n. 阶段
- 7. amiable adj. 和蔼可亲的; 亲切的
- 8. harmonious adj. 和谐的;和睦的;协调的
- 9. Inefficiency n. 效率低; 无效率
- 10. adequate adj. 充足的;适当的;胜任的

- 11. teamwork n. 团队合作,协力
- 12. aloofness n. 冷漠; 高傲
- 13. dignity n. 尊严; 高贵
- 14. effusive adj. 流出的; 感情横溢的
- 15. distinguished V 著名的;卓著的;高贵的
- 16. recommendation n. 推荐; 推荐信
- 17. frequent adj. 频繁的; 时常发生的 accountable adj. 有责任的; 有解释义务的; 可解释的
- 18. supervision 监督; 管理



- 1. Rich knowledge is indispensable for interpretation in guiding activities.
 - 具备丰富的知识是当好导游的基础。
- 2. A quality tour guide must be imbued with a lively disposition that can arouse a tour group's vigor and confidence.
 - 一名高素质的导游必修要有活泼愉快的气质,能调动旅游团的情绪和信心。
- 3. To be a successful tour guide, one must possess the superior skills and techniques of guiding, the ability to handle urgent problems and an excellent mastery of all phases and levels of professional work.
 - 作为一名成功的导游员要技能高超、具备处理事物的能力而且专业精通。
- Excellent skills and techniques must be continually and constantly practiced in guide work and in actual experience.
 - 好的技能、技巧只能在实践中才能学到和提高。
- 5. It can create an amiable and harmonious environment for tourists. 微笑能为游客营造温暖和谐的氛围。
- 6. Create an atmosphere of teamwork both within and outside their travel agency. 在旅行社内外营造团队协作氛围。



Part Four Working Skills

Tips on Dealing with Complaints

Exercises: Answer following questions.

How should you deal with complaints even though these reactions are natural?
 Avoid being defensive, irritate, or angry, even though these reactions are natural. You do not have to admit any fault at this moment. Listen carefully, without comment.



- 2. How should you deal with it if you don't understand tourists' opinions? You may ask open-ended questions, so that the visitors has a chance to explain.
- 3. Why should you say I am sorry at least, even if you think you are right? Because the visitor could feel upset. As a result, he always look for your faults.
- 4. How should you deal with it if tourists ask you to change the plan?

 You always report to your superior but do not fall back on him/her to deal with the visitor.
- 5. What tips are very important when you deal with complaints?

 As an employee avoiding his responsibility, let his supervisor deal with the visitor.



ightharpoonup igh

- 1. defensive adj. 自卫的, 防御用的
- 2. irritate vt. 刺激, 使兴奋; 急怒
- 3. empathy n. 移情作用
- 4. upset adj. 心烦的, 混乱的
- 5. retain v. 保持,记住
- 6. goodwill n. 好意
- 7. open-ended adj. 开放式的,无限制的;自由的
- 8. supervisor *n*. 监督人, 管理人
- 9. refund *n*. 退款, 赏还
- 10. responsible adi. 负责的,有责任的可靠的
- 11. fall back 回避, 逃走
- 12. make an adjustment 做出调整



- 1. Use sympathy and empathy—try to put yourself into the place of the visitor. 要使用同情和移情的技巧,尽量使自己站在游客的角度。
- 2. If you don't understand, you may ask open-ended questions, so that the visitors has a chance to explain.

如果你不理解,可以展开公开的讨论,以便游客有机会解释。

- 3. Thank you for bringing the matter to our attention. 感谢你们对这个事情的关注。
- 4. Action—always report to your superior, especially if an adjustment (refund, etc), is made, but do not fall back on him/her to deal with the visitor.

对你采取的措施要不断向您的领导反应情况,特别是要对计划做出调整时(退款等事宜)多征求领导意见,但是不要回避顾客,也不要对顾客擅自处理。



Part Five Consolidation

I. Answer questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. How will you get along well with your tourists according to the guide speech? Give some examples.
 - Welcome to Wuhan. I'm very glad to have all of you in China. I' be with you in the following 8 days of the tour. I'm glad to be of your service and I hope we will have a very good time together.
- 2. What measures would you take in order to identify your tourists easily according to the guide speech? Give some examples.
 - Here are the badges of our travel service for everybody, please pin them on and here are the caps of our travel service, please put them on.
- 3. How will you introduce on the way in order to make tourists understand the city according to the guide speech?
 - You may take a brief look at the outskirts and the city along the way. Please look straight ahead, we can see famous Yellow Crane Tower. Here is the busy railway station Now we are in the culture center of the city, Wuchang district. There are many famous universities in this area. The Wuhan Lijiang hotel is located in Baiyun cranes Town—Wuchang City, covers an area of about twenty thousand square meters.
- 4. How will you introduce some main scenic spots on the way?

 It takes 5 minutes by car to arrive at the Yellow Crane Tower. It is only 4 kilometers from the Provincial Museum—Zeng Hou Yue chime during the Warring States period known as the miracle of the World is now in the possession of the museum.
- 5. Please introduce Wuhan Lijiang Hotel briefly.
 - Wuhan Lijiang Hotel is located in Baiyun cranes Town—Wuchang City, covers an area of about twenty thousand square meters. There are 126 guest rooms equipped with beautiful, health equipment, and equipped with central air-conditioning, satellite TV network, international and domestic direct dial telephone. There are also a number of recreational facilities.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. 在紧急时刻, 要沉着冷静。
 - Be calm and resourceful in an emergency.
- 2. 不能在有禁止标志的地方拍照。
 - Don't take photos in places with signs stating that they are forbidden.
- 3. 时间安排很紧请准时。
 - Schedules are tight. Be on time.



4. 注意请不要乱丢垃圾。

Please be aware. Don't litter!

5. 当你离开房间时请把钥匙交给服务员,因为他们要为你们整理房间。

When you leave each day, you should return your key because the hotel attendant will clean your room.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

1. Some tour members will ask for special arrangements like visiting another city not scheduled or visiting a particular facility. Be polite, but firm about your inability to handle those special requests.

有些游客将提出一些特殊的要求,例如参观不在计划之内的别的城市或者特殊的设施。 要显得礼貌一些,但是没有能力处理这种特殊事情立场要坚定。

2. When arriving at a new place and meeting a local guide for the first time, the national guide should be first off the coach along with the overseas tour escort.

当到达一个新地方和首次遇见地陪时,全陪先下车与海外领队接洽。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

Asking for Help

(G=Tour Guide; T=Tourist)

- G: What can I do for you, sir? (能为您效劳吗?)
- T: I want to know some information (我想了解一些情况) about touring the windmills Town.
- G: <u>It'll take you two hours by bus</u> (乘公共汽车要两小时, 开车要一个小时) and one hour by car.
- T: I'd rather go by car to save time. (为了省时,我还是开车吧。)
- G <u>I suggest that you contact the Travel Agency for more detailed information.</u> (我建议您最好同旅行社联系一下具体情况。) Here is the phone number.

Module Four

Parting Service 模块四 送客服务

Parting

Unit One

Checking Out 第一单元 结帐

俗语

世上没有免费的午餐

Introduction

在旅行即将结束之前,地陪应当作好离开前的一切准备工作。首先,他/她应当确定 离开的日期和时间,确认飞机航班和机票。其次,他/她应当告诉客人在何时何地办理离 店手续,并提醒客人随身带好护照和贵重物品。第三,议定起床、早餐和离店的时间以 及集合地点。要预留足够的时间以及时赶到机场或火车站,例如,乘国际航班要提前两 个小时到达机场,国内航班要提前一个半小时,而乘火车则要提前一个小时到车站。第 四,提醒客人离店前支付个人账单,包括服务费、长途电话费和其它杂费。最后,他/她 应当把证件还给客人。通过这些,游客们就能知道时间安排,作好离开酒店的准备。

Discussion

- 1. What should a local guide do the night before the tour group is leaving for their own country?
 - He should get everything ready for departure.
- 2. What should a tourist do if he/she has drunk the orange juice in the refrigerator of his room? He should pay his personal bills.



Part One Situational Dialogue

酒店结账

(R=前台,G=地陪,T=游客) 前台:早上好,先生,能帮你吗?

旅游实务英语辅导用书

导游: 我想退房。

前台: 能告诉我你的名字和房间号吗?

导游: 我是中国国际旅行社的张林。

前台: 张小姐稍等。让我准备一下你的账单。

导游: 行

(过了一会儿)

前台: 对不起, 久等了。你们一行 24 人, 三天前, 也就是十月十六号的下午进店, 对吗?

导游:对的。麻烦让我看一下我们团队的账单。

前台: 行,给你。

(看了片刻)

导游:对不起,有一张单还没有结。我立即把它处理好。

(这时,一名游客过来了。)

游客: 请问,有我要结的单吗?

导游: 是的, 你拨打了一个国际长途, 这不包含在包价旅游费用里。

游客:对不起,我马上就结。

导游: 别急,还有时间。

游客: 我应付多少钱?

前台: 这是账单, 请核查。

游客: 嗯,总共是3.5美元。对的,没问题。

前台: 你付现金还是刷信用卡?

游客: 现金

前台: 好的。这是收据,谢了。

游客: 别客气,再见!

前台: 再见! (转向导游) 张小姐, 你就结账吗?

导游: 行。

前台: 请问用什么方式付账, 张小姐?

导游: 从公司账号支付。

前台: 是中国国际旅行社,上海分社?

导游:对,这是我的卡。

前台: 请稍候……让你久等了,请在这儿签字。

导游: 行。签好了。

前台: 这是你的卡和收据。行李都收拾好了吗?

导游: 收好了。我们打算早上8点半出发。

前台: 我会叫行李员帮忙。

导游: 多谢。

前台: 也谢谢你们的光顾。祝一切顺利!再见,张小姐。

导游: 再见。





Part Two A Guide Speech to Tourists

如何办理退房结账手续

女士们、先生们,半个月来,我们按计划参观了所有的景点,明天,我们将踏上归 程。我非常感谢这些日子里你们的理解和合作,这使我们的旅行顺利而愉快。这儿有份 关于我们服务的调查问券要请你们填写,如有意见和建议请写在背面。现在,请将调查 问券递给我。非常感谢大家的合作和支持。

还有几分钟就要到酒店了,因为明天大家将离开我国,因此有一些重要的事要你们 做好。首先,晚上要为明天的行程作好准备。我知道你们大多买了很多的礼物,所以最 好是把礼物放在要托运的行李中。其次,如果有打长途电话、喝了小冰箱里的饮料或要 了其它的服务,最好是在明天早上7点半前结好帐。最后,应带的证件放在方便取用的 地方, 贵重物品要随身携带。我们会在酒店大厅设置团队号牌, 你可以把行李放那。

我想经过这么长时间的旅行后大家都很疲劳了,很想好好休息。所以如果有人打算 在酒店附近转转,买一些纪念品和本地特产回去送给朋友的话,最好早些回来。请记住 明天飞机是上午11点起飞,所以我们要在8点出发。

女士们、先生们,酒店到了。带好你的物品,明天将乘另外一辆车去机场。如果有 意见或建议,请第一时间给我电话。希望你们最后一晚过得愉快、难忘。



Part Three Supplementary Reading

Banks in the West

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What is a bank?
 - A bank is a financial institution that serves as a financial intermediary.
- 2. What related types of entities does bank mean?
 - A central bank, a commercial bank, and a savings bank.
- 3. What plays a very important role in the financial system? Depository institutions.
- 4. How about the United States in terms of government restrictions on financial activities? Banks have traditionally been prohibited from owning non-financial companies.
- 5. Where does the main income of a bank come from? The interest paid on loans.

西方银行

银行是提供金融中介服务的金融机构。"银行"这个词可以是相关类型的实体之一:

中央银行代表政府,通过实施货币政策、调货币供应来行使财政权力。商业银行吸纳存款并集中资金,通过直按借贷或间接投资资本市场进行放贷。在国际金融市场中,这些机构通过将资金从有盈余投资金融资产的一方,转移到需要借贷投资不动产的一方,使有资本亏损的(借贷方)和有资本盈余的(投资方和放贷方)市场参与者联系起来。储蓄银行(即英国所谓的"建房互助协会")很像储蓄与借贷社,在只允许从金融合作社的成员中借贷的情况下,它们可以被股东持股或者互相持股。储蓄银行和储蓄与借贷社的资产结构很相似,住宅抵押贷款占其总资产的主要部分。

因为储蓄机构在金融体系中的重要地位,银行业一般会受到政府有关金融活动的限制。目前的全球银行资本金需求协定被称作新巴塞尔资本协定。在德国等一些国家,历史上银行就是工业公司的大股东,但在美国等其他一些国家,银行一直被禁止控股非金融企业。在日本,银行通常是相互持股的企业实体即"企业集团"的核心。在 2007 年开始的全球金融危机之前,冰岛银行遵循的就是国际规则标准。

银行的主要收入是借贷产生的利息。银行提供给储户较低的利率而向贷款者提出较高的利率。这两种利率之差即使银行的净收入。银行还通过零售服务费、商业银行产品、交易费或者诸如财信管理咨询、保险、现金管理服务、抵押贷款手续费这样的新兴服务获取非利息收入。



Part Four Background Knowledge

Paying the Bill

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. Why should tourists learn about the ways of payment before the trip? Because it will make their trip smooth and pleasant.
- 2. What's the best way of making the payment abroad according to the experts? Paying by card.
- 3. What kind of credit card should tourists bring with them when traveling to the United States and European countries?
 - When traveling to Europe and America, etc, consumers had better use dual-currency credit card as far as possible.
- 4. What kind of card had tourists better choose if they go to Hong Kong? Union Pay Card.
- 5. Can you describe the proper reimbursement methods after tourists come back?

 One is to repay in Dollars directly; the second is to pay in RMB according to the credit card vouchers, credit card payments and the ID card; the third method is to call the bank credit card service hotline to pay in RMB on phone.



付 款

现在去国外旅游是很平常、方便的事。但在出国旅行前,你应该花时间去弄清一些细节。如果你不懂在旅行途中如何付款,那你的旅行不会顺利、愉快。如果你不能 决定是带现金,还是借记卡、或是信用卡,你应该考虑到它们各自的利弊并听取专家的意见。

境外旅游如果带着大量现金,一不安全,二不方便。因此,理财专家建议,消费者出境旅游尽量采用刷卡消费方式,但需要注意以下几个方面:

首先,赴欧美等地旅游尽量使用双币信用卡。"消费者出境旅游可以带上少量外汇,以备打车、买小吃等小额消费之需,大额消费则使用双币信用卡,其最大好处在于消费者可以利用信用卡的透支功能,充分享受信用卡的免息期。理财专家说,现在国内双币信用卡大多是人民币和美元的双币卡,使用这种信用卡在境外消费时,是将当地的物价折算成美元,再将美元折算成人民币,每次刷卡消费都要支付这两次的货币兑换费。因此,消费者最好是按照旅游目的地使用的币种选择相应币种的信用卡,比如去欧洲旅游,消费者最好就带上一张人民币和欧元的双币卡。

其次,赴港澳地区旅游最好使用银联卡。目前银联卡在香港地区的受理覆盖面已超过 90%,而且银联一般是以刷卡当日的人民币对港币汇率将港币直接折算成人民币,且免收货币转换费;而赴港澳旅游的消费者如果使用 VISA、万事达等外卡购物消费,需支付消费金额 1.5%左右的货币转换费。

最后,境外刷卡消费回来还款有多种途径。消费者境外刷卡消费回来还款可采取以下三种方式还款:一是直接以美元还款;二是携刷卡凭证、信用卡还款单及身份证至银行网点进行人民币购汇还款;三是拨打有关银行信用卡服务热线进行电话委托人民币还款。



Part Five Consolidation

I. Oral Exercises

A: Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- 1. What were tourists asked to do after the guide expressed his or her thanks? To fill out a questionnaire.
- 2. What should the tourists do if they signed for other service at the hotel? They should settle the bill before 7:40 a.m. of the next day.
- 3. Where can tourists put their baggage after they have returned the keys to the reception desk? They can put their baggage round the signal board of their group in the lounge of the hotel.
- 4. What time will the group start for the airport? At 8:00 sharp of the next day.
- 5. Will the tourists take the same coach to the airport the next morning?

No, they have to take another coach to the airport.

B: Ask students to turn the learned Guide Speech into a dialogue including relating contents.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. 王小姐,对不起让你久等啦。请在此签个名好吗? Sorry to have kept you waiting so long, Miss Wang. Can I have your signature down there, please?
- 2. 请问,我所带的团的个人账单都结了吗? Excuse me, have the members in my group already settled their personal bills?
- 3. 请大家把所买的礼品装好,以方便安检托运。 You'd better put the souvenirs you bought in the luggage to be registered.
- 4. 最好把护照放在方便拿取的地方,并随身携带贵重物品。
 You had better have your certificates within easy reach and take along your valuables with you.
- 5. 去欧美旅游最好选择双币卡。

You had better choose double-currency card when you plan to travel to Europe and the United States.

III. Translate the following passage into Chinese.

- 1. 经过十多天的游览,你们按计划参观了所有的景点,明天,你们将踏上归程。我非常感谢这些日子里你们的理解和合作,这使我们的旅行顺利而愉快。这儿有份关于我们服务的调查问卷要请你们填写,如有意见和建议请写在背面。
- 2. 银行的主要收入是借贷产生的利息。银行提供给储户较低的利率而向贷款者提出较高的利率。这两种利率之差就是银行的净收入。银行还通过零售服务费、商业银行产品、交易费或者诸如财物管理咨询、保险、现金管理服务、抵押贷款手续费这样的新兴服务获取非利息收入。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue

(R= Receptionist; G=Tour Guide)

- R: Good morning, madam. What can I do for you?
- G: Yes. I'd like to check out. (我想结账。)
- R: May I have your name and room number?
- G: I'm Wang Li, from China International Travel Service.
- R: A moment please, Miss Wang. I will draw up the bill for you. (我把你的账单准备好。)
- G: OK.
- R: Sorry to have kept you waiting, you, 12 persons in your group, checked in on the afternoon of Oct. 2nd, didn't you? (10 月 2 号上午入住的,是吗?)



- G: Yes. Please show me the bill that the tourists in my group signed in your hotel. (游客在你 们酒店签的单。)
- R: OK. Here you are. Do you pay in cash or by credit card?
- G: By credit card.
- R: Ok. Here is the receipt. (这是你的收据) Thank you.
- G: Not at all. Bye!



Seeing off the Tourists 第二单元 给游客送行

俗语

海内存知己, 天涯若比邻

Introduction

送别游客是旅游服务最后的也是非常重要的一环。导游应当学会一些送别的技巧以使旅行完美。

当旅游团将动身前往机场时,地陪和全陪必须将游客们需要托运的大件行李归集起来,一般来说,应当在上午 12 时前办完结账手续。离开酒店前,导游应当再次提醒游客们支付个人额外消费并归还钥匙给前台,防止他们遗忘。当游客在巴士上坐好后,导游应当细心清点人数并提醒游客检查确认没有将物品遗失在旅馆。如果乘坐的是国际航班,旅行团应在飞机离港前 2 个小时抵达机场。

在前往机场的路上,导游应向游客致以告别辞。恰当得体的致词不仅能够消解旅行中的一些不愉快,也有益于增进你和游客之间的友谊。

Discussion

- What should a tour guide do before the group leaves the hotel?
 Before the group leaves, the tour guide must collect all the heavy bags of the tourists for consignment and go through the check-out formalities before 12:00. Then, he should remind the tourists to pay their personal bills and return the keys to the reception desk again in case they should forget.
- 2. What should a tour guide do when the tour group is on the bus?

 He should carefully count the number of people and remind the tourists to check and make sure that they have nothing left behind in the hotel.



>> Part One Situational Dialogue

给游客送行

(A=导游: B=游客: C=领队)

(所有游客在酒店大堂集合。)

导游: 到齐了吗? 我点下名······,行了,都到了。现在大家检查一下是否遗忘了东西在旅馆,特别是你们的贵重物品和护照。

游客: 啊,我的手表在哪?可能忘在房间里啦。

导游: 别急,上去找找,我们在这等。(几分钟后,这个旅客跑着回来了)

游客: 谢天谢地, 在枕头下面找到了。

导游:好。请注意,我们的巴士到了,请随我上车。旅馆服务员会把你们的行李拿上车 并放妥当。

(在巴士上,对游客)

导游: 我们要出发前往机场了,请再次检查你们的贵重物品和护照。 路上大约要一个小时,大家可以稍事休息。

游客: 时间过得真快,我们在中国呆都超过15天了。

导游: 是啊,我在机场迎接你们的场景就好像发生在昨天。而现在你们就要离开了,希望对中国之行感到愉快。

游客: 是的,这是一个奇妙的、令人难忘的旅行。

导游: 与你们相伴的日子我也很快乐,我会记住大家。从你们那里我也学到了很多,谢 谢大家的理解和合作。

游客: 你很棒,我们会想念你的。

导游: 我也会想你们的。中国幅员辽阔大,旅游资源丰富。我盼望着能再次与大家相见。

游客: 我们也一样。中国真是个伟大的文明古国,我们肯定会再来的。

导游: 您说得真好。大家注意了! 过几分钟就到机场了, 到了后请跟随怀特先生, 我去替大家办理登机手续。

游客: 谢谢!

导游: 我们到了,请大家带好个人物品下车。

领队: 各位,请随我前往首都机场的3号航站楼,不要走散了。

(大约十分钟后。)

导游: 女士们先生们,都办好了。这是你们的机票、护照和登机牌。需要托运行李的请 跟我来。其它各位请随怀特先生在这里休息一下。请记住我们乘坐的航班是上午 11点起飞,从26号登机口登机。

(20分钟后,所有人都办好了行李托运手续)

领队: 请注意! 跟着我夫排队讲行安全检查。

(转身对导游说)



领队: 张小姐,现在要和您道别了。感谢您的付出的努力和细心周到,这些都给我们留 下了深刻印象。

导游: 我也受益良多。您的支持与合作使这次旅行顺利、愉快,非常感谢您。

领队: 期待着再次与您见面。

导游: 将来会再见面的。再见,各位。祝航行愉快!欢迎再次光临中国。

游客: 感谢您为我们所做的一切。再见,张小姐。



Part Two A Guide Speech to a Tourism Site

浂 뭬 词

非常遗憾你们的中国之行即将结束了,借此机会,我代表我们旅行社,也代表我自 己向大家道别,向大家表示衷心感谢。首先,我要感谢领队 Mr. White 和团队的每一个人 在中国的 15 天里给予我的友谊和帮助。同时也感谢你们的理解与合作,这使我工作得轻 松顺利而又愉快。而我也了解了许多你们的文化和国情。令我很高兴的是,我的英语水 平通过与你们的交谈有了很大的进步。我感谢所有这些,这都使我受益非浅。

过去的十五天里,我们攀登了世界八大奇迹之一的长城。参观了紫禁城、明十三陵; 也参观了在西安的兵马俑博物馆,它的历史可以追溯到2000年之前:在桂林我们欣赏了 美丽的喀斯特地貌;我们也品尝了中国最好的美食—广东菜……。总之,您对中国有了 一些印象。 但是,中国是一个大国,有记载的历史就有5000年之久,国土面积达到了960 万平方公里,在中国有很多世界自然和文化遗址。15天的观光,用一个中国成语来形容, 好比是蜻蜓点水。所以,如果想进一步了解中国,您应当再次前来。我希望不久的将来 能在中国再次见到你们。可是,我知道现在是你们要回家与家人团聚的时候了,在你们 即将离别之际,我要说我遇到了一个非常好的人组成的一支很棒的团队,与你们相伴的 15 天我非常愉快。

在中国,旅游业是年轻的、正在发展的产业。我们正在尽力改进我们的旅游服务, 我想下次你们来的时候我们会有很大的进步。我们期盼你们的再次到来。

祝回家之旅愉快,谢谢。



Part Three Supplementary Reading

Customs Inspection

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

1. What do you think of the function of Customs inspection?

The Customs inspection is a national administrative management activity used to supervise, inspect and tariff inbound and outbound goods. It is to safeguard national sovereignty and

interests.

- 2. What are the four situations used by all countries to inspect foreign tourists or non-native? Exempt from examination; Oral declaration; Filling in the Customs declaration forms, but few have to open cases for inspection; Filling in the Customs declaration forms and accept the open-case inspection at the Customs.
- 3. Do you know the two channels at the Customs of China? What are they? Yes. They are "channel of declaration" and "channel of non-declaration".
- 4. Which channel should you choose when you are uncertain about the regulations? Declaration Channel.
- 5. Who can be exempt from inspection?

 Passengers holding diplomatic, courtesy visa issued by administrative departments of China.

海关检查

海关检查是对出入境的货物、邮递物品、行李物品、货币、金银、证券和运输工具等进行监督检查和征收关税的一项国家行政管理活动,是为了维护国家主权和利益,保护本国经济发展查禁走私和违章案件,防止沾染病毒菌的物品入境而采取的检查措施。

各国海关对外国旅客或非当地居民的检查通常有以下四种情况:

- (1) 免检。如西欧一些机场在海关处写明"不用报海关",或者在海关处根本无人办公。
- (2) 口头申报。不需要填写海关申报表,过海关时,海关人员只是口头问问带了什么东西。
- (3)须填写海关申报表,但在通过海关时,海关人员也只是口头上问问是否带了海 关所限制的物品,很少开箱检查。
 - (4) 须填写海关申报表,通过海关时还要开箱检查。

中国海关有两个过关通道,即"申报通道"和"无申报通道"。出入境的旅客如果未携带国家规定须向海关申报的物品时,就不需要填写这张申报单,他须从"无申报通道"(俗称"绿色通道")办理海关手续。出入境的旅客(除了被免除海关检查及与成人同行的16岁以下的旅客)如果携带了国家规定须向海关申报的物品时应填写物品申报单,并从"申报通道"(通常被称为"红色通道")办理过关手续。那些对规定不清楚的旅客应主动选择"申报通道",并在申报柜台填写申报表。

过关时,持有由中国主管部门签发的外交礼遇签证的旅客通过海关时应主动向海关出示有效证件,以免受检查。

出入境的旅客所携带的物品应在限定的物品数量之内并仅供个人使用。如果超出, 须向海关如实申报。





Part Four Skills and Requirements

Working Summary

Exercises: Answer the following questions.

- 1. What should a tour guide do when a tour has come to an end? The tour guide should make a working summary to review the whole tour service.
- 2. Why should a tour guide write a working summary? First, it is the requirement of relevant regulations; secondly, how the tour product is implemented can be reflected in a working summary; lastly, a tour guide can learn lessons and get more experience by doing it.
- 3. What does a good working summary include? Tour guiding process and personal summary.
- 4. How should the tour process be written? Objectively.
- 5. What do you think of the function of a working summary?

带团小结

带团小结要求导游带完一次旅游团后,进行自我总结,是必要的后续性工作。首先, 写带团小结是相关旅游法规的要求。根据《旅行社条例》和《旅行社条例实施细则》,国 家旅游局和各地旅游行政主管部门制订了旅行社业务档案管理规定,都把带团小结列为 业务档案的重要内容。其次,旅游产品的进行情况,也可从导游带团小结中加以体现。 一份好的带团小结,对旅行社负责人来说,可以成为决策的依据。通过导游带团小结, 管理者可以看出这条线路走得如何、这次带团完成得怎样、是否具有更大的推荐价值。 最后,每次带团回来后及时写好带团小结,可以总结教训,积累经验,从而提升导游的 素质。

一份好的带团小结应包括带团过程经过和个人总结两部分。带团经过中应包括带团 时间、游览景点、游客、交通工具、主要事件等客观表述。个人总结则是导游对此次带 团的总结性表述。具体来说,应包括:一、要真实。带团小结必须客观、真实;二、要 高度概括。在记述全面的同时,突出中心,记述带闭过程中有意义的内容,语言简练, 言简意赅:三、针对不同产品,重点不同。不同旅游产品的带团小结也应有所区别。比 如,红色旅游团队的带团小结应突出旅游景点的革命和教育意义、游客的感受和导游自 身的想法等,观光游团队的带团小结则应侧重于不同景点的观赏价值以及游客对景点的 欢迎程度、评价等。

写带团小结的目的是为了尽量真实、客观地对带团情况进行全面总结, 但语言要 更精炼。总结的过程能使你更清楚地了解带团过程中应发扬的方面及将来应改进的不 足之处。



Part Five Consolidation

I. Oral Exercises.

A: Answer the following questions according to the guide speech learned.

- What should a guide express when a tour is coming to an end?
 He or she should express thanks to the tour leader and the tourists for their supporting and understanding.
- 2. What made the guide's work easier and the tour smoother in the guide's view? The cooperation and understanding of the tour leader and the tourists.
- 3. What cities have the tourists been to during the fifteen days according to the guide speech? Beijing, Xi'an, Guilin and maybe Guangzhou.
- 4. Which cuisine is the best in China according to the guide? Cantonese cuisine.
- 5. Is a 15-day tour enough if you want to get a better understanding of China? Why or why not?
 - Of course not. Because China is a big country with more than 5 000 history, so there are a lot of world natural and cultural heritage sites in China.
- B. Ask students to turn the learned Guide Speech into a dialogue including relating contents.

II. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1. 请仔细检查以防东西遗漏在房间,特别是贵重物品和护照。

 Just check in case something is left in the hotel room, especially your valuables and passports.
- 2. 到达机场后请跟着我。王先生会帮我们去办理登记手续。 On arrival at the airport please remember to come with me. Mr. Wang will do the check-in procedure for us.
- 3. 要托运行李的游客,现在请随我一起去托运行李。 Now please follow me to consign for shipment if you have any.
- 4. 我们一直在尽力提高我们的服务质量。

We have been making great efforts to improve our travel service.

5. 我在此要衷心感谢各位在这些日子里对我们工作的支持和配合。

I'd like to extend my heartfelt thanks to all of you for your supporting and cooperation during these days.

III. Answer the following passage into Chinese.

1. 车子马上就要到达机场啦,因此我最后说几句。在过去十天里,我们参观了许多中国



著名的旅游景点,这些都是联合国科教文组织列为世界自然与文化遗址的景点。而且 我相信由于司机的认真、辛苦地工作以及各位的理解与配合,我们的旅程过得很愉快。 我想借此机会代表我们旅行社和我个人向你们表示衷心的感谢和道别。

2. 海关检查是对出入境的货物、邮递物品、行李物品、货币、金银、证券和运输工具等进行监督检查和征收关税的一项国家行政管理活动,是为了维护国家主权和利益、保护本国经济发展查禁走私和违章案件,防止沾染病毒菌的物品入境而采取的检查措施。

IV. Fill in the blanks of the dialogue.

(G=导游: T=游客)

- G: How time flies! You have been in China for ten days. (在中国已经带了十天了)
- T: Yeah, it has been a wonderful experience for us. (一段非常精彩的经历)
- G: I'm glad that you enjoy your stay in Chian. But now it's time <u>for us to say good-bye to each other.</u> (我们互相道别的时候了)
- T: You have been a great help to us along the way. We'd like to <u>express our heart-felt gratitude</u> to you. (表示我们诚挚的谢意)
- G: Thanks for your understanding and cooperation during these days. I wish you a pleasant journey and all the best. (旅途愉快、一切顺利)

参考文献

- 1. 曹波,姚忠. 湖南旅游英语. 长沙:湖南人民出版社,2002.
- 2. 曹玉泉,房玉靖,餐饮与服务英语,北京:对贸经济贸易大学出版社,2009.
- 3. 常骏跃. 旅游英语口语. 大连: 大连理工大学出版社, 2002.
- 4. 陈立美. 语境与英文导游辞的创作. 厦门教育学院学报, 1999: 97.
- 5. 陈丕琮. 实用英汉旅游词典. 上海: 世界图书出版公司, 2000.
- 6. 陈鑫源. 英语口语词典. 上海: 上海外语教育出版社, 1996.
- 7. 程立初. 论人文景观名称的英译. 北京第二外国语学院学报, 1999, (1): 71-73.
- 8. 戴凡, Stephen L. J.Swmith. 文化碰撞—北美人际交往误解剖析. 上海: 上海外语教育出版社, 2003.
- 9. 段开成, 黄保琴. 天津: 南开大学出版社, 1999.
- 10. 范黎光. 导游业务. 北京: 机械工业出版社, 2003.13.
- 11. 范立云. 酒店实务英语. 北京: 清华大学出版社, 北京交通大学出版社, 2009
- 12. 韩荔华. 导游词语言技巧. 北京第二外国语学院学报, 1997, (3): 12-21.
- 13. 浩瀚, 李生禄. 旅游英语实战实例. 北京: 北京航空航天大学出版社, 2009
- 14. 黄向, 苏丹. 旅游英语. 广州: 暨南大学出版社, 2009.
- 15. 何小庭. 旅游英语应用文写作. 北京: 旅游教育出版社, 2001.
- 16. 何志范. 上海英语导游. 北京: 旅游教育出版社, 2004.4.
- 17. 纪世昌. 汉英旅游词典. 长沙: 湖南地图出版社, 2003.
- 18. 金惠康, 罗向阳. 汉英旅游服务实用手册. 广州: 广东旅游出版社, 2006.
- 19. 李春. 英语导游在跨文化交际中的语用失误分析. 郑州: 郑州大学(学位论文), 2006.
- 20. 李伟. 旅游英语口语速成. 北京: 旅游教育出版社, 2003.
- 21. 刘锋, 金起元. 旅游英语翻译技巧探讨. 青海师范大学学报, 1995, (2): 91-93.
- 22. 刘丽莉. 导游英语实用教程. 天津: 天津大学出版社, 2010.
- 23. 刘上扶. 走遍中国旅游. 广州: 世界图书出版社, 2003, (5): 202.
- 24. 罗蔚宣. 中国世界遗产大观(I). 长沙: 湖南地图出版社、湖南文艺出版社, 2004a.
- 25. 罗蔚宣. 中国世界遗产大观(II). 长沙: 湖南地图出版社、湖南文艺出版社,2004b. 53.
- 26. 潘惠霞. 旅游英语. 大理: 东北财经大学出版社, 2002.
- 27. 彭金定. 高效英语会话教程. 长沙: 湖南人民出版社, 2005.
- 28. 覃福晓. 导游英语特点浅析. 广西师范大学学报(哲学社会科学版). 2002, (2): 208-210.
- 29. 隋铭才. 英美概况. 北京: 高等教育出版社, 2002.



- 30. 孙建军. 浅论旅游英语与跨文化交际. 韶关学院学报(社会科学版), 2001, 22(1); 46-50
- 31. 唐年青,陈恒仕,向晓. 旅游专业英语. 大连: 大连理工大学出版社, 2006.
- 32. 田淑芳. 旅游英语. 长春: 中国商业出版社, 2003.
- 33. 王向宁, 实用导游英语, 北京: 北京大学出版社, 2010
- 34. 文润, 尚清芳. 中国旅游精华. 北京: 中国地图出版社, 2003.
- 35. 肖璇, 吴建华, 旅游从业英语, 武汉: 华中科技大学出版社, 2009.
- 36. 向晓. 旅游景点语篇原型范畴研究与运用. 乐山师范学院学报, 2006a, 21 (9): 77-79.
- 37. 向晓. 从文化的角度研究旅游英语中的隐喻构建, 广西教育学院学报, 2006b, (5): 137-139.
- 38. 向晓. 意象图式与旅游英语景点段落构建及其教学启示。四川教育学院学报, 2006c, 22 (11): 33-35.
- 39. 向晓. 旅游词语汉英文化对比. 牡丹江大学学报, 2007, (2): 28-30.
- 40. 向晓. 图式理论与旅游英语景点语篇构建. 黄山学院学报. 2008, (3): 135-137:19-22.
- 41. 向晓. 旅游英语语言认知解读. 北京: 光明日报出版社, 2010.
- 42. 向晓. 高职院校旅游英语课程教学内容改革研究与实施. 职业时空, 2011, (2): 41-43.
- 43. 向晓, 唐年青. 职业教育 ESP 项目课程开发研究. 黑龙江对外经贸, 2011, (9): 138-140
- 44. 向晓, 唐年青. 网络环境 ESP 课程教学方法的改革研究与实践一旅游英语个案研究. 职业时空, 2012, (2): 89-92.
- 45. 姚宝荣, 韩琪. 浅谈旅游资料英译. 中国翻译, 1998, (5): 27-30.
- 46. 姚保荣. 模拟导游教程. 北京: 中国旅游出版社, 2004.
- 47. 袁贤诠,赵伐. 旅游英语. 重庆: 重庆出版社,1999.
- 48. 张军. 饭店职业英语. 昆明: 云南大学出版社, 2000.262.
- 49. 周纬, 钱中丽, 王宏建. 旅行社英语. 广州: 广东旅游出版社, 2003. 191.
- 50. 赵晓芳. 酒店情境英语. 北京: 旅游教育出版社, 2010.
- 51. 朱华. 四川英语导游景点讲解. 北京: 中国旅游出版社, 2004a.
- 52. 朱华, 赖宇红. 西南旅游英语基础教程. 北京: 北京大学出版社, 2004b.
- 53. 朱华. 旅游英语教程. 北京: 高等教育出版社, 2006, 2008.
- 54. 朱歧新. 英语导游必读. 北京: 中国旅游出版社, 2005.